



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

I · C · S

GREEK  
COMPO-  
SITION

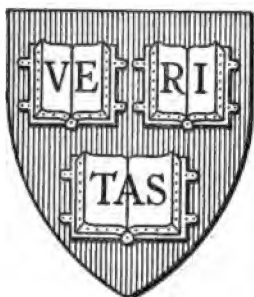
---

SCHOOLS

---

BONNER

EducT 1119.09.200



HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY

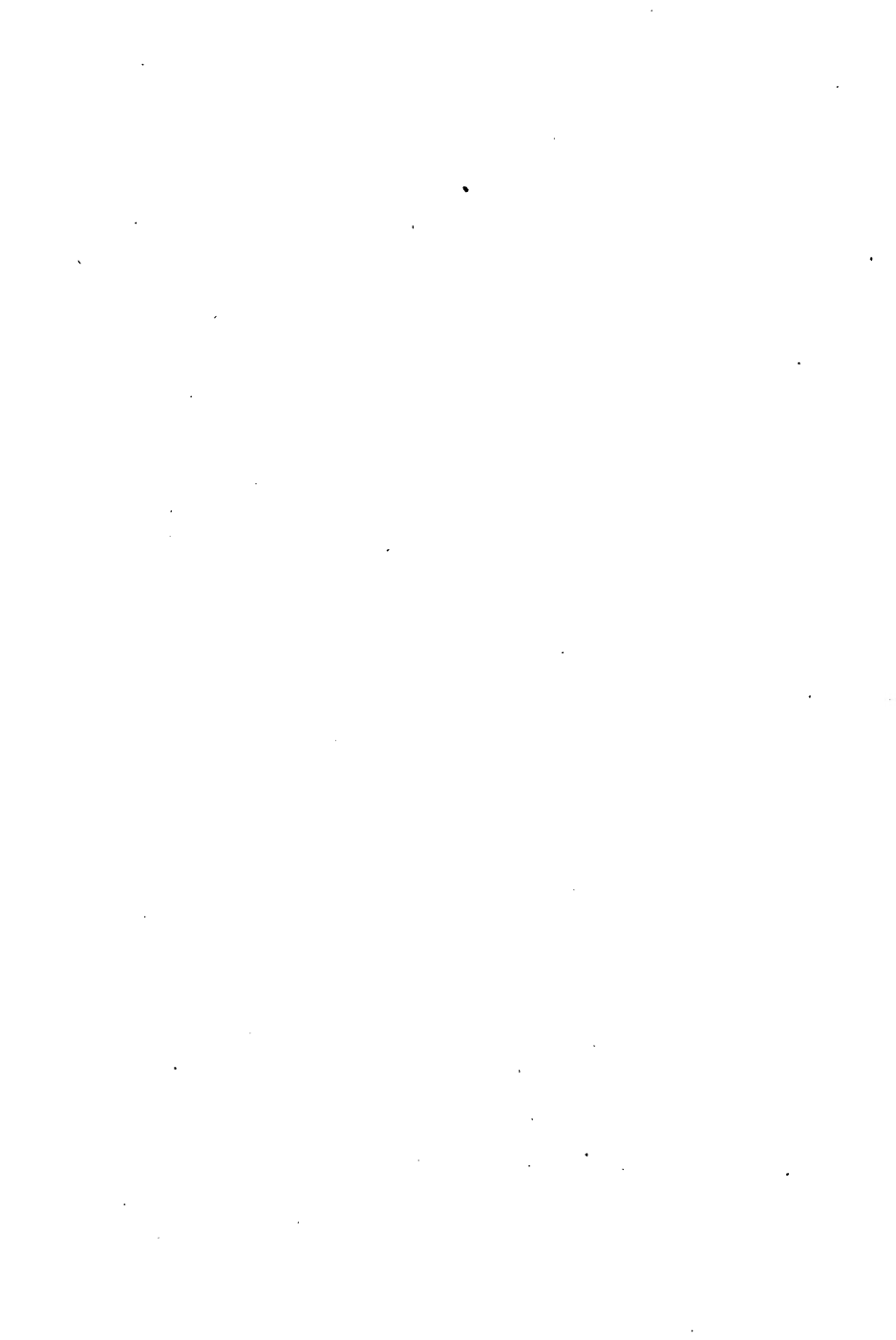
Anna A. Raymond.

September 1912.



3 2044 102 849 700





**Intercollegiate Classical Series**

---

**GREEK COMPOSITION**  
**FOR SCHOOLS**

**WITH EXERCISES BASED ON ANABASIS I-III, COLLEGE  
ENTRANCE PAPERS, AND ORIGINAL SELECTIONS**

**BY**

**ROBERT J. BONNER, PH.D.**

**ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO**

**CHICAGO**  
**SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY**  
**1909**

Educ. T 1119.03.200

EDUCATIONAL CONGRESS LIBRARY

RECEIVED

SEP 20 1939

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY  
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

TYPOGRAPHY BY  
MARSH, AITKEN & CURTIS COMPANY, CHICAGO

ROBT. O. LAW CO., PRINTERS AND BINDERS, CHICAGO

## PREFACE

The plan of teaching composition by means of exercises based upon the texts selected for reading, which is so generally favored by teachers of Latin and Greek, has been adopted in this book. Several important modifications, however, have been introduced, with the object of assisting the student to classify and fix in his memory the syntax and vocabulary, which are necessarily presented in considerable variety in such exercises. It has been my experience that the average student usually fails to systematize the points in syntax which he learns from day to day, with the result that his knowledge is incoherent and incomplete. The ease, too, with which the Greek words can be found in the text makes the acquisition of a working English-Greek vocabulary a slow process. These weaknesses become more apparent when the work takes the form of a general exercise and the student is deprived of the ready assistance of the original passage.

In Part I the chief rules of syntax are presented in concise form. As they are intended, primarily, to be of assistance in translating English into Greek, the standpoint of treatment is English, rather than Greek, idiom. In many cases they take the form of directions for turning English into Greek. For example, the different Greek equivalents for *while*, *until*, *whenever*, *as if*, etc., are collected and arranged so as to make the learning of them and the reference to them as easy as possible. Not all the constructions that occur in the *Anabasis* are included. Some are left out as being exceptional or of infrequent occurrence; others are omitted because it is presumed that they have been learned in the first year. Irregular usages have been kept in the background. Irregularities and

exceptions are easily learned by reading Greek, if the normal usages are known. It may be noted here, however, that Xenophon's use of  $\omega\varsigma$  in consecutive clauses is treated as a normal construction.

Care has been taken to illustrate the rules of syntax by simple examples taken from the more familiar books of the *Anabasis*. To the beginner the examples found in the grammars are usually understood with difficulty on account of the unfamiliar vocabulary. References to the grammars of Goodwin, Goodell, and Hadley-Allen are prefixed to each lesson for the convenience of teachers who wish their classes to use a grammar in connection with the work in composition. The lessons in syntax are accompanied by a series of easy exercises. Opportunities for review are furnished by devoting several sentences in each exercise to constructions dealt with in previous lessons. The vocabulary consists of about four hundred and seventy-five words in most common use, drawn from the first eight chapters of the *Anabasis*, each exercise being based upon a portion of the Greek text. This plan preserves from the beginning a very close relation between reading and writing. These lessons present in brief compass the essentials of Greek syntax, and the best results will be obtained by working through them before undertaking the continuous exercises. But they will be found useful for review at any stage of the work.

Part II consists of sixty exercises based upon *Anabasis* I—III and forty-one Supplementary Exercises. To each exercise based upon the *Anabasis* references to several constructions that occur in the text are prefixed. The references are to the sections of Part I. Several of the more difficult constructions occur twice in the exercises on the same book, and a larger number are repeated in the exercises on each book. Both oral and written exercises illustrate the syntax of the passage upon which they

are based, so that either may be omitted if there is not time to do both. Each exercise is subdivided to enable the teacher to assign a shorter lesson if desired. The exercises on each book are treated as a unit with reference to the points in syntax selected for special study; the whole field is covered as far as possible in each set of exercises. So, if a class has done the lessons in syntax, the exercises on the first book may be omitted.

For practice in conversation a few questions in Greek are appended to each of the exercises on Books I and II. The limitations of space made it impossible to add more; but similar questions can easily be framed by teachers who are interested in this sort of work.

The Supplementary Exercises, consisting of entrance examination papers of leading American and Canadian universities and selections from literary sources, are liberally annotated. The latter exercises have been selected from a larger number that were thoroughly tested for several years with classes preparing for admission to college. The notes consist chiefly of recasts of idiomatic phrases into language suitable for literal translation into Greek and of references to the first four books of the *Anabasis* for words and phrases. In this way the student is obliged to make some effort of his own before he can avail himself of the assistance given. The occasional reading of a few sentences in Greek in the midst of composing can not fail to be helpful and stimulating. These pieces of real English it is hoped will prove a welcome change to both teacher and student. It is recommended that the Supplementary Exercises be not deferred too long. My experience has been that they can be translated with profit by a class whose vocabulary is limited to the first book of the *Anabasis*. It was found that more real progress was made, for, instead of imitating and copying, the students were obliged to think for themselves.

One of the most serious difficulties that the teacher of Greek has to cope with is the paucity of the average student's English-Greek vocabulary. To render the acquisition of a vocabulary comparatively easy, the chief words and phrases of the *Anabasis* are classified under thirty-nine heads. The association of similar expressions will facilitate the process of memorizing. No great difficulty will be experienced in committing the bulk of the Word-lists to memory, as a large proportion of the words already form part of the student's Greek-English vocabulary, after he has read several books of the *Anabasis*. However, the Index will render it possible to use the Word-lists in connection with the Supplementary Exercises without memorizing them.

I am under obligation to John Henderson, M.A., principal of the Collegiate Institute at St. Catharines, Ontario, who tested with his classes a number of selections which I submitted to him, and gave me the benefit of his experience in selecting and arranging the Supplementary Exercises. I desire to thank Professor Goodell of Yale University and his publishers, D. Appleton and Company, for their courtesy in permitting me to use the sheets of their Greek Grammar in advance of publication. I am also indebted to Professor W. B. Owen of the University of Chicago, who read the proof of a number of the earlier exercises and made several valuable suggestions. But to the unfailing patience and invaluable assistance of Professor Edward Capps of the University of Chicago I owe more than I can acknowledge.

R. J. BONNER.

DE LAND, FLA.,  
November, 1902.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	iii
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	viii

## PART I

### GREEK CONSTRUCTIONS:

Lesson I. Uses of the Article . . . . .	1
II. Uses of <i>αὐτός</i> , <i>πρῶτος</i> , and the Reflexives . . . . .	5
III. <i>ἄλλος</i> , <i>ἕτερος</i> , and the Demonstratives . . . . .	9
IV. Questions . . . . .	11
V. The Accusative . . . . .	14
VI. The Genitive . . . . .	16
VII. The Dative . . . . .	19
VIII. Tense Idioms . . . . .	21
IX. Final and Object Clauses . . . . .	25
X. Consecutive Clauses . . . . .	29
XI. <i>While, As long as, Until, Before that</i> . . . . .	32
XII. <i>When, Whenever, As soon as, Since</i> . . . . .	36
XIII. Simple and Unreal Particular Conditions . . . . .	39
XIV. Future Conditions . . . . .	42
XV. Present and Past General Conditions, and Potential Optative and Indicative . . . . .	44
XVI. Conditional Relative Sentences . . . . .	47
XVII. Causal and Concessive Clauses . . . . .	51
XVIII. Commands, Prohibitions, Exhortations, and Wishes . . . . .	54
XIX. Indirect Quotation of Simple Sentences . . . . .	57
XX. Infinitive and Participle in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	60
XXI. Indirect Quotation of Complex Sentences . . . . .	64
XXII. Virtual Indirect Discourse and Indirect Questions . . . . .	68
XXIII. The Participle . . . . .	72
XXIV. <i>Must, Ought, and May</i> . . . . .	79
XXV. Negatives and Particles . . . . .	82
MISCELLANEOUS HINTS . . . . .	89



## PART II

	PAGE
EXERCISES BASED ON THE ANABASIS I-III . . .	91
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES:	
College Entrance Examinations . . . . .	180
Original Selections . . . . .	189

## PART III

CLASSIFIED LISTS OF WORDS AND PHRASES FROM ANABASIS	
I-VII . . . . .	209
Adjectives . . . . .	242
Adverbs . . . . .	243
INDEX TO WORD-LISTS . . . . .	245

---

 ABBREVIATIONS

abs. = absolutely	infin. = infinitive
acc. = accusative	intr. = intransitive
aor. = aorist	Lat. = Latin
cf. = confer	mid. = middle
dat. = dative	nom. = nominative
ex. = exercise	obs. = observation
ff. = following	p., pp. = page, pages
fut. = future	partic. = participle
gen. = genitive	pass. = passive
Gl. = Goodell's Greek Grammar	perf. = perfect
Gn. = Goodwin's Greek Grammar	pers. = person
H. = Hadley and Allen's Greek Grammar	prep. = preposition
	trans. = transitive

# GREEK COMPOSITION

---

## GREEK CONSTRUCTIONS

### LESSON I

#### USES OF THE ARTICLE

(*Gn.* 941-984. *H.* 654-676. *Gl.* 544, 549-556, 574-575.)

1. With proper names of persons already mentioned or well known the article may be used.

He sends for Cyrus; Cyrus, therefore, goes up,  
Κῦρον μεταπέμπεται ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ  
Κῦρος. I. 1. 2.

2. With names of countries the article is generally used.

They came from Ephesus in Ionia, ἦλθον ἐξ  
Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας. II. 2. 6.

OBSERVE.—The names of cities and rivers are in apposition with πόλις and ποταμός.

The river Euphrates, ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμός.

The city of Celaenae, ἡ Κελαιναὶ πόλις.

3. The article is used with the demonstratives οὗτος, ὁδε, and ἐκεῖνος, when they qualify a noun. The demonstrative is regularly in the predicate position. § 11.

4. With μέν or δέ the article has the force of a demonstrative. οἱ μέν—οἱ δέ, *some—others*; ὁ δέ, *but he*; οἱ δέ, *but they*.

5. With possessive pronouns the article is used when reference is made to a single definite object.

My brother, ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός; *but* a brother of mine is ἐμὸς ἀδελφός. I. 7. 9.

6. The article may be used instead of an unemphatic possessive pronoun, provided no ambiguity can arise.

His mother, ἡ μήτηρ. I. 1. 8.

7. The participle with the article is equivalent to a noun or a relative clause.

The resolutions, τὰ δόξαντα. I. 3. 20.

Those who had been banished, οἱ ἐκτεπτωκότες.

I. 1. 7.

8. Adjectives and adverbs, or their equivalents, are used with the article as nouns.

The rich, οἱ πλούσιοι.

Those at home, οἱ οἴκοι.

Those from the cities, οἱ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων.

His own men, οἱ ἑαυτοῦ.

The children of Xenophon and those of the others,

οἳ τε Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων.

V. 3. 10.

9. The infinitive with the neuter article is a declinable verbal noun.

*Nom.*—To the victors belongs the rule, τῶν νικόντων τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστίν. II. 1. 4.

*Gen.*—To prevent them from burning, κωλύειν τοῦ (αὐτοῦς) καίειν. I. 6. 2.

*Dat.*—Weak by reason of the scattered condition of its forces, τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής. I. 5. 9.

*Acc.*—Hastening to the pursuit, εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες. I. 8. 25.

10. The article is generally omitted with βασιλεύς when the Persian king is referred to.

11. Position of the article.

(a) *Attributive position.*—When the noun is limited by an adjective or an equivalent the article immediately precedes the attributive word.

The good man, ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ, or ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ ἀγαθός, or ἀνὴρ ὁ ἀγαθός.

The friendship of the barbarians, ἡ τῶν βαρβάρων φιλία or ἡ φιλία ἡ τῶν βαρβάρων.

(b) *Predicate position.*—If the adjective is a predicate the article immediately precedes the noun.

The man is good, ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός.

## EXERCISE I

(Anabasis I. 1. 1-6.)

1. The king will appoint his son satrap.
2. The city of Miletus, in Caria, belonged<sup>1</sup> to the king.
3. Tissaphernes plotted against this city.
4. Those who had been dishonored were in danger.
5. Some were friendly to Cyrus, but others traduced him before Artaxerxes.
6. But he did not put his brother to death.
7. Representatives of<sup>2</sup> the king ordered Cyrus to march up.
8. He took his own troops and those of the Greek generals.
9. My mother will support me.
10. Instead<sup>3</sup> of being king, the younger son was in the power of the elder.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. ἦσαν . . . Τισσαφέρνης.<sup>2</sup> § 8.<sup>3</sup> Cf. ἀντ' ἐκείνου.

Oxytone. τιμή.  
 Paroxytone. λόγος  
 Proparoxytone. ἄνθρωπος

Perispomenon λιπεῖν  
 Properispomenon γῆτος

Accent.

short penult, long ultima. - acute on penult.  
 Long " , short " . - Circumflex " " .

a' } short for accent, except in optative.  
 ou }

## LESSON II

### USES OF αὐτός, πρῶτος, AND THE REFLEXIVES

(*Gn.* 987, 989-997. *H.* 678-693. *Gl.* 199, 546, 558, 559.)

12. In the nominative, αὐτός, without a substantive, is intensive, and means *self*.

He himself (i.e., in person) marched against the troops of Menon, αὐτὸς ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος. I. 5. 13.

13. In the oblique cases, without a substantive, αὐτός is intensive only when it is in an emphatic position; otherwise, it serves as the ordinary pronoun of the third person.

I saw him running away himself, αὐτὸν εἶδον ἀποδιδράσκοντα.

He appointed him general, στρατηγὸν αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξεν. I. 1. 2.

His soldiers, οἱ στρατιῶται αὐτοῦ.

14. In any case, with a pronoun or a substantive, αὐτός is intensive, unless it is in the attributive position, i.e., between the article and the substantive.

The ships of the Lacedaemonians and of Cyrus himself, αἱ τριήρεις αἱ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. I. 2. 21.

Menon himself was willing, αὐτὸς Μένων ἐβούλετο. II. 1. 5.

The walls themselves (the very walls), αὐτὰ τὰ τεῖχη.

15. When in the attributive position αὐτός means *same*.

On the same day, τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ.

16. Distinguish between πρῶτος, the adjective, and πρῶτον, the adverb.

Clearchus was the first to attempt to force his soldiers to advance, πρῶτος Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι. I. 3. 1.

In the first place, I made war on the Thracians, πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα. I. 3. 4.

#### THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT REFLEXIVES

17. The third person of the reflexive, ἐαυτοῦ, etc., regularly refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. It is called the direct reflexive.

He courted the barbarians in his service, τῶν παρ' ἐαυτῷ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο. I. 1. 5.

He ordered each to marshal his own men, ἐκέλευσε συντάξαι ἕκαστον τοὺς ἐαυτοῦ. I. 2. 15.

18. The pronoun of the third person, which occurs in Attic Greek in the forms οἱ and σφεῖς, σφῶν, σφίσι, σφᾶς, is used in a subordinate

clause, or with an infinitive or participle in the principal clause, to refer to the main subject. It is called the indirect reflexive.

The Greeks thought that they (the enemy) would attack them (the Greeks) in disorder, *ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι*.

I. 8. 2.

He requested that these cities be given to him, *ἡξιῶν δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις*. I. 1. 8.

- Δ 19. The usual practice in Attic Greek is to employ the indirect reflexive only where ambiguity would arise from the employment of *αὐτός* or the direct reflexive.

He orders Aristippus to send him the army he had, *παραγγέλλει τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα*. I. 2. 1.

He took the horsemen which he had, *ἔλαβε τοὺς ἱππέας οἱ ἦσαν αὐτῷ*. I. 5. 13.

He rode off with the few men about him, *ἀφιππεύει σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν*. I. 5. 12.

## EXERCISE II

(*Anabasis I. 1. 7-11.*)

1. Artaxerxes himself is not aware of this levy.
2. They themselves revolted.
3. He ordered the same generals to put to death those who had revolted.
4. In the first place, I myself shall restore the fugitives to their own country.



5. He gave the same pay to all.

6. His guest-friends were the first to beg Cyrus to give them money.

7. Tissaphernes had an excuse for banishing<sup>1</sup> those who<sup>2</sup> were causing him trouble.

8. He made peace with some, but he made war on others.

9. All those men did the same thing.

10. He wished Cyrus to send him the tribute.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 9.

<sup>2</sup> § 7.

## LESSON III

### ἄλλος, ἕτερος, AND THE DEMONSTRATIVES

(Gn. 966, 1004-1010. H. 695-698. Gl. 557, 561.)

#### 20. ἄλλος, *another*, of many; cf. Lat. *alius*.

(a) *With the article.*

The others (the rest), οἱ ἄλλοι.

The rest of the army, τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα.

(b) *Without the article.*

Another army, ἄλλο στράτευμα.

Another stood up, ἄλλος ἀνέστη.

#### 21. ἕτερος, *another*, of two—the *other*; cf. Lat. *alter*.

The one strikes the other, ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον παίει. VI. 1. 5.

They set up a second trophy, ἕτερον τρόπαιον ἔστησαν.

The other army, τὸ ἕτερον στράτευμα.

The opposite party, οἱ ἕτεροι.

#### 22. Special cases.

The next day, τῇ ἄλλῃ ἡμέρᾳ.

Some say one thing, others another, ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει. II. 1. 15.

The ships went in different directions, ἄλλαι νῆες ἄλλῃ ῥέχοντο.

Some from one place, others from another, ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν. I. 10. 13.

23. ὅδε means *this*, referring to what follows.  
 οὗτος means *this*, referring to what precedes.

He spoke as follows, ἔλεξε τάδε.

Thus he spoke, ἔλεξε ταῦτα.

24. ἐκεῖνος differs from οὗτος in indicating something more remote in time or space; ἐκεῖνος is *the former*, οὗτος, *the latter*.

I met Proxenus and Menon. I spoke to the former, but not to the latter, Προξένῳ τε καὶ Μένωνι ἐνέτυχον· ἐκεῖνῳ μὲν ἔλεξα, τούτῳ δὲ οὐ.

### EXERCISE III

(*Anabasis I. 2. 1-6.*)

1. They promised to be present with another army.
2. Menon arrived at the city of Colossae with the rest of the hoplites.
3. The one trusted the other.
4. He collected sufficient<sup>1</sup> troops to besiege the other city.
5. The next day he crossed a second river.
6. Cyrus marched inland with both Greek and barbarian troops.
7. Proxenus and the other generals commanded the former, but Cyrus commanded the latter in person.
8. They set out in different directions.
9. He banished those, but these he ordered to guard the acropolis.
10. We shall march through the following cities.

---

<sup>1</sup>Say: "troops sufficient to."

## LESSON IV

### QUESTIONS

(Gn. 429-436, 1600-1606. H. 282-283, 1011-1017. Gl. 471, 668.)

#### 25. Interrogative words.

##### (a) Pronouns.

τίς; who? τί; what or why? πότερος; which of two?

πόσος; how much? πόσοι; how many?

ποῖος; of what sort?

##### (b) Adverbs.

ποῦ; where?

πῇ; which way?

ποῦ; whither?

πόθεν; whence?

πῶς; how?

πότε; when?

#### 26. Forms of questions.

(a) A question is denoted by ἤ or ἄρα, or simply by the mark of interrogation (;).

Are you the one who carried the sick man? ἤ σὺ εἶ ὁ τὸν κάμνοντα ἀπάγων; V. 8. 6.

Is there any wrong that I have done you? ἔστιν ὃ τι σε ἠδίκησα; I. 6. 7.

(b) ἄρα οὐ expects the answer *yes*.

Would he not have recourse to every expedient, in order to inspire all men with fear? ἄρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ πάν ἔλθοι, ὥς πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι; III. 1. 18.

(c) *ἄρα μή* expects the answer *no*.

Will he oppose us (i. e. he will not, will he)? *ἄρα  
μή ἡμῖν ἐπαντιώσεται;*

27. Double questions are asked by *πότερον—ἤ*;

Will they follow Cyrus, or not? *πότερον ἔψονται  
Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ;*

28. Answers.

(a) *No* is expressed by *οὐδαμῶς*, *by no means*, or by the repetition of the verb with the negative.

Do you see me? No, *ἄρά με ὁρᾷς; οὐχ ὁρῶ.*

(b) *Yes* is expressed by *μάλιστα* or *ναί*, *certainly*; by *πάνν μὲν οὖν*, *by all means, to be sure*; or by the repetition of the verb.

Do you see me? Yes, *ἄρά με ὁρᾷς; ὁρῶ.*

29. The first person of the subjunctive is used in questions of appeal or doubt. The negative is *μή*.

What shall I say? *τί εἴπω;*

And may I not answer? *μή ἀποκρίνωμαι;*

EXERCISE IV

(*Anabasis I. 2. 7-11.*)

1. In which of the two cities was the park?
2. Where did they exercise themselves?
3. Where does the river Maeander rise?
4. How many stages<sup>1</sup> did the general march?
5. Why was the river called Marsyas?
6. What kind of animals did they hunt?
7. Was not the great king conquered in battle? Yes.
8. Did he build a fortified palace in this prosperous country? Certainly.
9. He did not owe the soldiers three months' pay, did he? No.
10. Whither are we to retreat?
11. Did Apollo conquer Marsyas or not?

---

<sup>1</sup> Accusative.

## LESSON V

### THE ACCUSATIVE

(*Gn.* 1046-1082. *H.* 710-726. *Gl.* 529-541.)

30. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

He remained there seven days, *ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτά.* I. 2. 6.

He marched eight parasangs, *ἐξελαύνει παρασάγγας ὀκτώ.* I. 2. 6.

31. The accusative is used to specify the part, character, or quality of an object—the accusative of specification.

A wall one hundred feet high, *τείχος ὕψος ἑκατὸν ποδῶν.* II. 4. 12.

32. Verbs meaning to do anything to a person take two accusatives.

They inflicted irreparable injury on them, *ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ αὐτούς.* II. 5. 5.

33. The following verbs, also, take two accusatives, one of the person, and one of the thing :

*αἰτῶ*, ask    *κρύπτω*, conceal    *διδάσκω*, teach  
*ἀποστερῶ* or *ἀφαιρῶμαι*, deprive

The Thracians wished to deprive the Greeks of their land, οἱ Θράκες ἐβούλοντο ἀφαιρῆσθαι τοὺς Ἑλλήνας τὴν γῆν. I. 3. 4.

## EXERCISE V

(*Anabasis I. 2. 12-18.*)

1. They marched three days' journey to a large city, called<sup>1</sup> Thymbrion.

2. Cyrus is said to have asked the wife of the Cilician king for money.

3. The queen did him a good turn.<sup>2</sup>

4. He did not order his men to deprive the barbarians of their tents.

5. This road is ten feet<sup>3</sup> in width.<sup>4</sup>

6. When they saw<sup>5</sup> the splendor of the battalions, they were astonished.

7. Those who were fleeing did not conceal their goods from the army.

8. They will remain many days there.

9. The center of the phalanx, drawn up in fours, advanced with a shout.

10. Did they not teach the barbarians wisdom?<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "Thymbrion by name."

<sup>2</sup> ἀγαθόν τι.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive.

<sup>4</sup> τὸ εὖρος.

<sup>5</sup> Use a participle.

<sup>6</sup> I. 2. 8.



## LESSON VI

### THE GENITIVE

(Gn. 1083-1156. H. 727-761. Gl. 505-518.)

34. The genitive denotes possession; *belong* is expressed by the predicate genitive with the verb *to be*.

The Ionian cities belonged to Tissaphernes, ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους. I. 1. 6.

35. The genitive is used to denote comparison when ἢ, *than*, is omitted.

All these barbarians will be more hostile to us than those with the king, πάντες οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. I. 5. 16.

Parysatis loved him more than Artaxerxes, Παρύσατις ἐφίλει αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ Ἀρταξέρξην. I. 1. 4.

36. Time within which is expressed by the genitive.

The king will not fight for ten days, βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν. I. 7. 18.

37. The genitive denotes cause with verbs of *emotion*.

θαυμάζω, admire; εὐδαιμονίζω, congratulate;  
τιμωρῶ, take vengeance.

We shall take vengeance on those who are present  
for their deceit, τοὺς παρόντας τῆς ἐξαπάτης  
τιμωρησόμεθα. VII. 1. 25.

38. The following adjectives, among others,  
take the genitive :

ἐγκρατής, master of	ἔμπειρος, skilled in
ἄξιος, worthy of	αἷτιος, guilty of
πλήρης and μεστός, full of	

39. The following are some of the more usual  
verbs that take the genitive :

ἅπτομαι, touch	ἁμαρτάνω, miss
μετέχω, share in	τυγχάνω, obtain
ἄρχω, rule	ἄρχω, begin
ἐπιλανθάνομαι, forget	γεύομαι, taste
περιγίγνομαι, be superior to	δέομαι, need
ἐπιμελοῦμαι, care for	ἀμελῶ, neglect
	ἐπιθυμῶ, desire

#### EXERCISE VI

(*Anabasis* I. 2. 19-23.)

1. We congratulated them on the splendor<sup>1</sup> of their city.
2. The plains are full of wheat and barley.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 2. 18.

3. Syennesis was master of the pass through the mountains.

4. Within three days they entered a well-watered country.

5. The mountains of Cilicia are higher than those<sup>1</sup> of Ionia.

6. These beautiful triremes belong to the Lacedaemonians themselves.

7. Cyrus had not neglected the queen.

8. They tasted the millet.

9. The others began the plundering.<sup>2</sup>

10. There they obtained all kinds of provisions which they lacked.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 8.

<sup>2</sup> § 9.

## LESSON VII

### THE DATIVE

(Gn. 1157-1198. H. 763-783. Gl. 519-528.)

40. The indirect object is put in the dative.

He gives him ten thousand darics, *δίδωσι αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικούς*. I. 1. 9.

41. The dative is used to denote the possessor.

It was called Corsote, *ὄνομα αὐτῇ Κορσωτή*. I. 5. 4.

42. The dative is used to denote the instrument.

Some one strikes him with a lance, *αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῶ*. I. 8. 27.

- 43. The dative is used to denote that by which a person or thing is accompanied.

He rides with his horse in a sweat, *ἐλαύνει ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ*. I. 8. 1.

44. Time when is expressed by the dative.

On the following day, *τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ*.

*Dative with εἰς the regular way to express accompaniment.*

45. The following adjectives, among others, take the dative:

ὠφέλιμος, useful	πολέμιος, hostile
παραπλήσιος, like	ὑποχείριος, subject to
εὐνους, well-disposed	

46. The following verbs, among others, take the dative:

παρακελεύομαι, exhort	βοηθῶ, assist
πείθομαι, obey	ὀργίζομαι, be angry at
πιστεύω, trust	πολεμῶ, make war on
εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω, be well-disposed to	

### EXERCISE VII

(*Anabasis I. 2. 24-3. 2.*)

1. These men were angry at the inhabitants.
2. He did not fall in with the slaves that day.
3. When the king met Cyrus he gave him valuable gifts.
4. They all had<sup>1</sup> beasts of burden.
5. They will not obey Clearchus.
6. Those companies fell into the hands of the enemy.
7. They were cut to pieces with swords.
8. You made war on nobody.
9. I forced him to call an assembly on the third day.
10. "We are well-disposed to you"; thus spoke the soldiers.

---

<sup>1</sup> Do not use ἔχω.

## LESSON VIII

### TENSE IDIOMS

(Gn. 1250-1278. H. 821-856. Gl. 454-470, 475, 483.)

47. The present is frequently used in narrative for the lively representation of the past. This is called the historical present.

He traduces Cyrus, διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον.

I. 1. 3.

48. The present, joined with πάλαι, has the force of the English perfect.

Whither we have long been hastening, ἔνθα πάλαι  
σπεύδομεν. IV. 8. 14.

49. εἶμι is used as the future of ἔρχομαι. ἦκω, *I am come*, and οἶχομαι, *I am gone*, are used as perfects.

50. The imperfect denotes an act in progress.

Another army was being collected, ἄλλο στρα-  
τευμα συνελέγετο. I. 1. 9.

51. The imperfect denotes a customary act.

They used to be rivals in valor, ἀλλήλοις περὶ  
ἀνδραγαθίας ἀντεποιούντο. V. 2. 11.

52. The imperfect denotes an attempted act.

Clearchus tried to force his men to advance,

Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο  
ἵέναι. I. 3. 1.

53. The imperfect, joined with *πάσαι*, has the force of the English pluperfect.

We had long been hastening, *πάσαι ἐσπεύδομεν*.

54. The aorist sometimes represents the English pluperfect.

(a) After *ἐπεί*, *ἐπειδή*, *ὥς*, and *ὅτε*.

When he had returned, *ὥς ἀπῆλθεν*. I. 1. 4.

(b) In relative clauses.

He summoned Cyrus from the government over which he had appointed him satrap, *Κῦρον μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησεν*. I. 1. 2.

55. The following perfects have a present meaning :

*οἶδα*, I know

*μέμνημαι*, I remember

*γέγονα*, I am

*δέδοικα*, I fear

*κέκτημαι*, I possess

56. Sometimes the English perfect is best represented by the Greek aorist. This is regu-

larly so when the result of the act is before the speaker.

I have summoned you, *παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς*.

57. *ἄν* with the imperfect or aorist in principal clauses expresses iteration.

Whenever the wings got separated, they would fill up the center, *ὅποτε διάσχοιεν αἱ πλευραί, τὸ μέσον ἂν ἐξεπίπλασαν*. III. 4. 22.

Selecting the proper person, he used to beat him, *ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν*. II. 3. 11.

58. The primary tenses are the present, perfect, future, and future perfect. The secondary or historical tenses are the imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect.

59. In the subjunctive and imperative, and in the optative and infinitive not in indirect discourse, the tenses have no time significance, but denote only the progress, completion, or simple occurrence of an act.

The present denotes an act in progress; the perfect, which is not common, an act as completed; the aorist, an act as simply brought to pass.

(For illustrations, see §§ 77, 81.)

*Pres.* -- continued or repeated action. }  
*Aor.* -- simple occurrence. }



## EXERCISE VIII

*(Anabasis I. 3. 3-8.)*

1. We have long been following you.
2. Clearchus tried to deprive the enemy of their arms.
3. Cyrus ordered him to bring the soldiers which he had collected.<sup>1</sup>
4. I shall never prefer the friendship of the barbarians.
5. He used to aid his allies.
6. I shall not be afraid to act justly.
7. We shall not go to the king, since we have not been well treated by<sup>2</sup> him.
8. They do not know whether<sup>3</sup> they will approve.
9. I wished to hear your opinion.
10. Cyrus has honored all these inhabitants.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 1. 6.

<sup>2</sup> ὑπό (gen.).

<sup>3</sup> cf. εἰ ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα.

## LESSON IX

### FINAL AND OBJECT CLAUSES

(*Gn.* 1362-1380, 1442-1444, 1532, 1548. *H.* 860, 880-888, 911, 951.  
*Gl.* 565, 576, 583b, 593c, 610, 611, 615, 636, 638, 642.)

60. Purpose is regularly expressed by *ἵνα*, *ὥς*, and *ὅπως*, with the subjunctive after primary tenses and the optative after secondary tenses. For the force of the tenses of the subjunctive and optative, see § 59. The negative is *μή*.

He intends to destroy the bridge in order that you may not cross, *διανοεῖται τὴν γέφυραν λύσαι ὥς μὴ διαβῇτε*. II. 4. 17.

Cyrus sent for the ships in order that he might land hoplites, *Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν*. I. 4. 5.

61. The subjunctive is frequently used after secondary tenses to present the purpose as it was originally conceived.

Abrocomas burned the vessels in order that Cyrus might not cross, *Ἀβροκόμας τὰ πλοῖα κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῇ*. I. 4. 18.

62. A relative clause with the future indicative expresses purpose. The negative is μή.

We have come with guides to conduct you, ἤκομεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἱ ὑμᾶς ἄξουσιν.

63. The infinitive is used to express purpose after verbs of *giving* and *choosing*. Occasionally negative purpose is expressed by τοῦ μή with the infinitive.

He handed over the country to the Greeks to be plundered, τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν. I. 2. 19.

Atalante was fortified to prevent pirates from ravaging Euboea, ἐτειχίσθη Ἀταλάντῃ τοῦ μή ληστὰς κακουργεῖν τὴν Εὐβοίαν.

64. The future participle expresses purpose. The avowed purpose is expressed by the addition of ὥς.

They arose to express their opinions, ἀνίσταντο λέγοντες ἃ ἐγίνωσκον. I. 3. 13.

He arrested Cyrus with the avowed purpose of putting him to death, ὁ δὲ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὥς ἀποκτενῶν. I. 1. 3.

65. Verbs of *fearing* take μή with the subjunctive after a primary tense, and μή with the optative after a secondary tense. The negative is οὐ.

I do not wish to go, because I am afraid that he will punish me, οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν δεδιὼς μὴ δίκην ἐπιθῇ. I. 3. 10.

He was alarmed lest he should not be able to get out of the king's country, ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξελθεῖν. III. 1. 12.

66. If the infinitive follows the verb of *fearing* in English, use the infinitive in Greek.

I should be afraid to follow the guide, ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ἔπescθαι. I. 3. 17.

67. Verbs of *striving*, *precaution*, and *consideration* take ὅπως with the future indicative after both primary and secondary tenses. The negative is μή.

He plans that he may never again be in his brother's power, βουλευέται ὅπως μή ποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ. I. 1. 4.

68. Sometimes ὅπως with the future indicative is used absolutely and has the force of 'an imperative.

See that you be men worthy of your freedom, ὅπως ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας.  
I. 7. 3.

69. The following verbs take object clauses with ὅπως:

φροντίζω, contrive or devise  
 ἐπιμελούμαι, take precautions  
 πειρῶμαι, try<sup>1</sup>  
 παρασκευάζομαι, arrange  
 βουλεύομαι, plan  
 σκοπῶ, consider  
 διαπράττω, effect

OBSERVE.—Occasionally the subjunctive occurs after verbs of *striving*. Not unfrequently the future is changed to the optative after secondary tenses. For other irregularities in Xenophon's use of final and object clauses, see Goodwin's "Moods and Tenses," page 400.

### EXERCISE IX

(*Anabasis* I. 3. 9-14.)

1. They were afraid that Cyrus would inflict punishment on them.
2. They considered how they should most speedily proceed to Greece.
3. They will send men to purchase provisions.
4. They will choose generals to lead them back.
5. They asked Cyrus for boats, with the avowed intention of sailing away.
6. Clearchus assembled the soldiers to prevent their proving false to Cyrus.
7. They were afraid to express their opinions.
8. He plans not to be wronged.
9. We are afraid that he will not give us boats.
10. They did this in order that the enemy might not seize the heights.

---

<sup>1</sup> The infinitive is more usual.

## LESSON X

### CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

(*Gn.* 1445-1460. *H.* 910, 927, 953-4. *Gl.* 566-567, 615, 639a.)

70. ὥστε or ὡς with the infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, expresses a tendency to produce a result, which may or may not be realized. The negative is μή.

I have triremes so as to take their ship, ἔχω τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον.

I. 4. 8. (The result did not follow.)

They drew the mouths of the bags together, so that the water should not touch the hay, διφθέρας συνήγον ὡς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ. I. 5. 10. (The result did not follow.)

71. ὥστε with the indicative expresses a result that actually did follow.

So superior was he in numbers, that he was beyond the left wing of Cyrus, τοσοῦτον πλήθει περιῆν ὥστε τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν.

I. 8. 13.

72. If the result did not follow, the infinitive must be used. If the result did follow, either

construction may be used, with this distinction, that the indicative emphasizes the fact that the result did follow.

73. Observe the following idiomatic use of ὥστε after a comparative :

He is too weak to assist his friends (*literally—*  
weaker than so as to assist his friends),  
ἐλάττω ἔχει δύναμιν ἢ ὥστε τοὺς φίλους  
ὠφελεῖν.

74. *On condition that, or provided that* is represented by ἐφ' ᾧτε with the infinitive. The negative is μή.

Dexippus was chosen on condition that he collect the vessels, Δέξιππος ἡρέθη ἐφ' ᾧτε πλοῖα συλλέγειν. VI. 6. 22.

They said they would give up the bodies, provided that they did not burn the villages, οἱ δ' ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν τοὺς νεκροὺς ἐφ' ᾧτε μὴ καίειν τὰς κώμας. IV. 2. 19.

75. A relative characterizing clause sometimes expresses result. The negative is οὐ.

Who is so mad as not to wish to be friendly to you? τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; II. 5. 12.

## EXERCISE X

*(Anabasis I. 3. 15-21.)*

1. Who is so foolish as to trust those guides?
2. We shall follow Cyrus on condition that he does not make war on his brother.
3. He had soldiers to punish his enemy.
4. They were too cowardly to go on board the triremes.
5. We are so frightened that we will not make use of his vessels.
6. Cyrus sent for the generals, in order that he might know the resolutions of the soldiers.
7. The river was so distant that the army was afraid to march up with Cyrus.
8. He sent men to promise a daric a month.
9. This undertaking is greater than the former.
10. They were too wise<sup>1</sup> to elect other generals.

---

<sup>1</sup> σοφός.



## LESSON XI

### WHILE, AS LONG AS, UNTIL, BEFORE THAT

(Gn. 1463-1474. H. 920-924. Gl. 568, 631, 644.)

76. *While* or *as long as* is represented by *ἕως, ὅσον χρόνον, ἔστε*, or *ἐν ᾧ* with the indicative, if the time is definite. The negative is *οὐ*.

While we remain here, we ought to consider,  
*ἕως μένομεν αὐτοῦ, σκεπτέον ἐστίν.* I. 3. 11.

While these things were going on, the Greeks  
went out for plunder, *ἐν ᾧ ταῦτα ἦν, ἐπὶ  
λείαν ἐξήρσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες.* V. 1. 17.

77. If the time is indefinite, the subjunctive with *ἄν* is used after primary tenses, and the optative after secondary tenses in indirect discourse. The negative is *μή*. For the tenses, see § 59.

Consider whether it is right to support them as  
long as they remain, *ἐννοήσατε εἰ εἰκὸς  
τρέφειν αὐτοὺς ὅσον ἂν χρόνον μένωσι.*  
V. 1. 12.

They passed a resolution that the war should be  
truceless, as long as they should be in the  
enemy's country, *δόγμα ἐποιήσαντο τὸν  
πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολε-  
μία εἶεν.* III. 3. 5.

While we are on the march, let Timasion ride in advance, ἕως ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίων προελαυνέτω. VI. 3. 14.

78. *Until*, after an affirmative sentence, is represented by ἕως, μέχρι, μέχρι οὗ, or ἔστε with the indicative, usually the aorist (§ 54), when the time is definite, that is, when it is past.

They did this until darkness came οὐ, ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο. IV. 2. 4.

They conducted the Greeks, until they brought them to the borders of the Colchians, παρήγαγον τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων ὅρια κατέστησαν. IV. 8. 8.

79. When the time is indefinite, that is, when it is future, the subjunctive with ἂν is used after primary tenses, and the optative alone after secondary tenses in indirect discourse.

Wait until I come, περιμένετε ἔστ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω. V. 1. 4.

They resolved to advance until they joined Cyrus, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προῖέναι ἕως Κύρω συμμείξειαν. II. 1. 2.

80. *Until*, after a negative sentence, is πρὶν; it is followed by the indicative, usually the aorist, when the time is definite, that is, past.

He refused to come into the power of Cyrus, until his wife persuaded him, ὁ δ' οὐ πρό-

πρὶν - necessarily meaning before Taken infinitive.  
 " - until = ind. subj. or opt. (fact) exp. condition. vivid -  
 πρὶν ἂν + inf.

τερον Κύρῳ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἤθελε πρὶν  
ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισεν. I. 2. 26.

81. When the time is indefinite, that is, future, the subjunctive with *ἄν* is used after primary tenses, and the optative after secondary tenses in indirect discourse.

He requests him not to make peace, until he consults him, δέϊται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευσῇται. I. 1. 10.

He promised not to stop until he restored them to their homes, ὑπέσχετο μὴ πρόσθεν παύσασθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. I. 2. 2.

OBSERVE.—The subjunctive with *ἄν*, the construction used in the direct form, may be retained instead of the optative. (See § 61.)

82. *Before*, in the sense of *before that*, after an affirmative sentence, is *πρὶν* and the infinitive with or without a subject accusative.

They crossed before the others answered, διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. I. 4. 16.

Before they completed twenty stadia, they were in the neighborhood of the village, πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διεληλυθέναι ᾗσαν πρὸς τῇ κόμῃ. IV. 5. 22.

83. *Before* (*before that*), after a negative sentence, is equivalent to *until* after a negative sentence (§ 80).

## Summary:

After affirmative sentences—

*Before that* is *πρίν* with the infinitive.

*Until* is *ἕως* with indicative, subjunctive, or optative.

After negative sentences—

*Before that* is *πρίν*, with the indicative, subjunctive, or optative.

*Until* is *πρίν*, with the indicative, subjunctive, or optative.

## EXERCISE XI

(*Anabasis I. 4. 1-5.*)

1. I shall be friendly to Cyrus until he injures me.
2. While they remained at Issoi, in Cilicia, many vessels were at anchor beside the city.
3. We shall not follow you until you give us more pay.
4. It will not be possible to pass by as long as the enemy guard the passage.
5. He besieged Miletus until Cyrus sent for him.
6. He did not flee until Cyrus landed troops.
7. Cyrus resolved<sup>1</sup> not<sup>2</sup> to make war on the enemy until the rest of the ships should arrive.
8. The mercenaries deserted to Cyrus before he overpowered the enemy.
9. They promise to help Cyrus in war until he conquers Abrocomas.
10. They will not advance before seizing<sup>3</sup> the gates.

---

<sup>1</sup> Lit., "It seemed good to Cyrus." <sup>2</sup> μή. <sup>3</sup> λαμβάνω.

## LESSON XII

### WHEN, WHENEVER, AS SOON AS, SINCE

(Gn. 1428. H. 913. Gl. 627-630, 633c.)

84. *When*, in the sense of *after that*, is represented by *ὥς*, *ἐπεί*, or *ἐπειδή* with the indicative, usually the aorist. The negative is *οὐ*.

When he saw Clearchus he hurled his axe, *ὥς εἶδε Κλέαρχον ἵησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ*. I. 5. 12.

When he had ridden past all he stopped his chariot, *ἐπειδή πάντας παρήλασεν ἔστησε τὸ ἄρμα*. I. 2. 17.

85. *When*, in the sense of *at the time that*, is represented by *ὅτε* or *ἡνίκα* with the indicative. The negative is *οὐ*.

Xerxes is said to have built this palace when he was retreating from Greece, *Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτα τὰ βασίλεια*. I. 2. 9.

86. *Whenever*, after a primary tense, is *ὅταν*, *ὁπότεν*, *ἐπειδάν*, or *ἐπὴν*, with the subjunctive. The negative is *μή*.

Whenever any one attempts to pass this way, they roll down stones, ὅταν τις ταύτη πειράται παριέναι, κυλινδοῦσι λίθους. IV. 7. 4.

87. *Whenever*, after a secondary tense, is ὁπότε, ἐπεί, or ἐπειδή, with the optative.

Whenever any one pursued, the asses ran forward, οἱ ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προύδραμον. I. 5. 2.

88. *As soon as* is ἐπεὶ τάχιστα, ὥς τάχιστα, or ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα, with the indicative. The negative is οὐ.

As soon as dawn broke all sacrificed, ὥς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέφαινεν ἐθύοντο πάντες. IV. 3. 9.

89. *Shall have*, in a clause introduced by *as soon as*, or *when*, is represented by the aorist subjunctive with ὅταν, ὁπότεν, ἐπειδάν, or ἐπήν.

When I shall have accomplished what I wish, I shall come, ἐπειδὰν διαπράξωμαι ἂ δέομαι, ἥξω. II. 3. 29.

90. *Since*, used of time, is ἀφ' οὗ or ἐξ οὗ.

It is not yet many days since you conquered their descendants, οὐπω πολλαὶ ἡμέραι ἀφ' οὗ τοὺς ἐκείνων ἐκγόρους ἐνικᾶτε. III. 2. 14.

## EXERCISE XII

*(Anabasis I. 4. 6-11.)*

1. Whenever any one wished to go away, Cyrus used<sup>1</sup> to permit him to go.

2. As soon as the two generals had<sup>2</sup> sailed away, Cyrus assembled the soldiers and spoke as follows:

3. "I shall not deprive you of your property, as long as I make use of you."

4. Whenever they come to a beautiful park, they destroy it.

5. When they had put their property on board the vessels, they persuaded their men to sail away.

6. It is seven days since they marched to a river called Euphrates.

7. Whenever any one deserted the king, he would<sup>3</sup> pursue him with ships.

8. The majority were afraid that Cyrus would ill-treat the women.

9. When they were encamping in the village, they burned down a large and beautiful palace.

10. When I (shall) have arrested them, I shall guard them.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 51.    <sup>2</sup> § 54.    <sup>3</sup> § 57.

## LESSON XIII

### SIMPLE AND UNREAL PARTICULAR CONDITIONS

(*Gn.* 1390-1392, 1397-1402, 1414, 1417. *H.* 392-393, 395-397, 905.  
*Gl.* 645-649, 656.)

91. Present and past conditions, which do not imply that the condition will, or will not, be fulfilled, take the indicative in both the protasis (the *if* clause) and the apodosis (the conclusion). The negative of the protasis is *μή*, of the apodosis, *οὐ*.

The pass was impracticable for an army to enter, if any one tried to prevent it, *ἡ εἰσβολὴ ἀμήχανος ἦν εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν.* I. 2. 21.

If you wish you may have us as allies, *εἰ βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἡμᾶς λαβεῖν συμμάχους.* V. 4. 6.

If Clearchus broke the treaty he has his deserts, *εἰ Κλέαρχος ἔλυσεν τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει.* II. 5. 41.

92. Present and past unreal conditions take *εἰ* with the imperfect or aorist indicative in the



protasis, and *ἄν* with the imperfect or aorist indicative in the apodosis. The imperfect is used in present conditions. In past conditions, the aorist denotes a definite act; the imperfect, continued or repeated action.

If you had not come we should (now) be on our way to the king, *εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα*. II. 1. 4. (The imperfect refers to present time.)

We should have been with you long ago if Xenophon had not led us here, *ἡμεῖς πάλαι ἂν ἦμεν παρ' ὑμῖν, εἰ μὴ Ξενοφῶν ἡμᾶς δεῦρο ἀπήγαγεν*. VII. 6. 9.

93. *εἰ μὴ* is sometimes equivalent to *except*, and *εἰ δὲ μὴ* to *otherwise* or *else*.

They said that this river had never become fordable except then, *ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπώποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε*. I. 4. 18.

Do not do this, else you will be censured, *μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μὴ, αἰτίαν ἔξεις*. VII. 1. 8.

### EXERCISE XIII

(*Anabasis* I. 4. 12-19.)

1. If the generals obtained gifts they concealed<sup>1</sup> them from the soldiers.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 33.

2. If Cyrus had not promised to give the army full pay for five months, they would have been angry with him.

3. If you are willing<sup>1</sup> to go up with Cyrus, I bid you cross the river.

4. If they had not voted to begin the march up, Cyrus would not be glad.

5. He will not restore them to their country until they obey him.

6. Whenever the soldiers follow Cyrus, he praises them.

7. Cyrus knew this before he gave them money.

8. They were not able<sup>2</sup> to cross the river, except in boats.

9. Announce these things, otherwise the soldiers will go back.

10. Abrocomas was the cause of the burning of the boats.

---

<sup>1</sup>I. 2. 26.    <sup>2</sup>I. 2. 25.

## LESSON XIV

### FUTURE CONDITIONS

(*Gn.* 1403-1410. *H.* 898-900. *Gl.* 650-653.)

94. Vivid future conditions (*shall* or *will*) take *ἐάν*, *ἤν*, or *ἄν* with the subjunctive in the protasis and the future indicative or its equivalent in the apodosis.

But if the others vote against it we shall go back,  
*ἤν δ' ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν.*

I. 4. 15.

If you choose war, come here no longer without weapons,  
*ἐὰν πόλεμον αἰρήσθε, μηκέτι ἦκετε δεῦρο ἄνευ ὅπλων.*

95. *εἰ* with the future indicative is used, instead of *ἐάν* with the subjunctive, as a still more vivid form, with an implied threat or warning.

If this shall happen it will be bad for the whole line,  
*εἰ τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται.* IV. 8. 11.

96. Less vivid future conditions (*should* or *would*) take *εἰ* with the optative in the protasis and *ἄν* with the optative in the apodosis.

We should set out for home if they would refrain from injuring us, πορευοίμεθα ἂν οἴκαδε, εἴ τις ἡμᾶς μὴ λυποίῃ. II. 3. 23.

## EXERCISE XIV

(*Anabasis* I. 5. 1-7.)

1. Unless you start the ostriches quickly you will not catch them.

2. If you should pursue the asses they would run.

3. If there were any wild animals they were not able to catch them.

4. If the inhabitants would sell grain we should buy it.

5. If the whole country is bare the pack-animals will perish of hunger.

6. Unless they should make forced marches they would not procure provisions.

7. If food does not fail the soldiers they will remain there four days.

8. If they should march on the left<sup>1</sup> bank of the river they would arrive at a deserted city.

9. Ostriches run too<sup>2</sup> quickly to be caught.

10. If there were forage the horses would not have perished.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Having the river on the right." <sup>2</sup> § 73.

## LESSON XV

### PRESENT AND PAST GENERAL CONDITIONS, AND POTENTIAL OPTATIVE AND INDICATIVE

(*Gn.* 1327-1341, 1393-1396. *H.* 872, 894. *Gl.* 461c, 467c,  
479, 480, 650, 651.)

97. Present general conditions take *ἐάν* with the subjunctive in the protasis and the present indicative (or its equivalent) in the apodosis.

It is (always) possible to catch the bustards, if (ever) one starts them quickly, *τὰς ὠπίδας, ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν.* I. 5. 3.

98. Past general conditions take *εἰ* with the optative in the protasis and, in the apodosis, the imperfect indicative or an equivalent form denoting repetition (§ 57).

If ever he went (anywhere), he used to summon his friends and engage in earnest conversation, *εἰ δέ ποτε πορεύοιτο, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο.* I. 9. 28.

If any one seemed to him to be shirking, he would beat him, *εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη βλακεύειν ἔπαισεν ἂν.* II. 3. 11.

99. The English *should* or *would* in less positive statements, as opposed to absolute statements, is expressed by *ἄν* with the optative (potential optative). In the same way, *should have* or *would have* is expressed by *ἄν* with the past tenses of the indicative (potential indicative).

They made a rush, just as one would run for a prize, *ἔεντο ὥσπερ ἄν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης*.  
I. 5. 8.

I should like, *βουλοίμην ἄν*.

They considered how they should best cross, *ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἄν κάλλιστα διαβαῖν*.  
IV. 3. 14.

They leaped into the mud more quickly than one would have thought, *εἰσεπήδησαν εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θάπτον ἢ ὥς τις ἄν ᾤετο*. I. 5. 8.

## EXERCISE XV

(*Anabasis* I. 5. 8-12.)

1. If ever Cyrus ordered them to carry out the wagons, they would leap into the water.

2. If they are in haste they never<sup>1</sup> waste time.

3. It was not possible to purchase provisions, unless they crossed the river.

4. If any one wrongs his soldiers, Clearchus is always<sup>2</sup> angry.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 3. 5.      <sup>2</sup> *del.*

5. It is not possible to fight the king unprepared, unless one collects an army quickly.

6. If the king's forces were not dispersed, his army would be strong.

7. Whenever there is no ford, they use rafts.

8. If ever Clearchus rode through Menon's camp, the soldiers hurled stones at him.<sup>1</sup>

9. Whenever a shout was raised, everybody ran.

10. When they were on the rafts, the water did not touch them.

11. No other soldiers would have leaped into the mud.

12. We should not like to cross on those rafts.

---

<sup>1</sup> Genitive.

## LESSON XVI

### CONDITIONAL RELATIVE SENTENCES

(*Gn.* 1019-1041, 1427-1440. *H.* 912-919, 993-1009. *Gl.* 612-621.)

100. The common relatives with their antecedents are: *He—who*, οὗτος—ὅς; *as great—as*, τοσοῦτος—ὅσος; *such—as*, τοιοῦτος—οἷος; *all—who*, πάντες—ὅσοι; -περ, appended to the relative, strengthens it.

101. Antecedents are frequently omitted when they can be easily supplied.

He set out from Sardis with those I have mentioned, ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων. I. 2. 5.

102. A relative which would regularly be in the accusative is usually attracted into the case of the antecedent, if the latter is a genitive or dative.

Cyrus sent to the king the tribute from the cities which Tissaphernes happened to possess, ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνης ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων. I. 1. 8.



103. When the antecedent is definite, the relative takes the indicative; when the antecedent is indefinite, the relative clause is equivalent to a condition. The negative is *μή*. The forms of the conditional relative sentence correspond to the six forms of the conditional sentence:

104. Simple present or past particular conditions. (§ 91).

For any whom they did not find they raised a cenotaph, *οὓς μὴ εὑρισκον κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν*. VI. 4. 9.

Let him to whomsoever these things seem good raise up his hand, *ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἀνατείνειν τὴν χεῖρα*. III. 2. 9.

105. Unreal present or past conditions.

He would not have given what he had not wished, *ἂ μὴ ἐβούλετο, οὐκ ἂν ἔδωκεν*.

106. Vivid future conditions.

I shall obey whomsoever you choose, *τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι*. I. 3. 15.

107. Less vivid future conditions.

I should be afraid to go on board the vessels he might give us, *ἐγὼ ὁκνοίην ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη*. I. 3. 17.

108. Present general conditions.

It is the men who do whatever is done in battle, οἱ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὃ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. III. 2. 18.

109. Past general conditions.

As far as the Greeks advanced in the pursuit, so far was it (always) necessary for them to retreat again fighting, ὅποσον διώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. III. 3. 10.

110. Observe the following idiomatic uses of relative pronouns:

To the best of my ability, ἧ δυνατόν μάλιστα.  
I. 3. 15.

As rapidly as possible, ἧ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα.  
I. 2. 4.

And he, καὶ ὅς. I. 8. 16.

There was one who was caught, ἔστιν ὅστις κατελήφθη. I. 8. 20.

You injured my territory as much as you could, κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν ὃ τι ἐδύνω.  
I. 6. 7.

Suddenly a house, fired by some one or other, blazed up, ἐξαπίνης ἀνέλαμψεν οἰκία, ὅτου ἐνάψαντος. V. 2. 24.

It will be possible, οἷόν τε ἔσται.

## EXERCISE XVI

*(Anabasis I. 5. 13-6. 4.)*

1. All who were terrified ran to arms.
2. Whatever was not useful they burned.
3. He is hostile to any one who plots against him.
4. I should give the king any letter Cyrus might write
5. He will slay whomsoever he captures alive.
6. Whoever was related to the king (always) plotted against Cyrus.
7. The king ordered his cavalry to receive whoever was not friendly to Cyrus.
8. They would join battle with any one whom they might see.
9. Wherever they did not see the trail of horses it was possible to get forage.
10. He would have set an ambush wherever he was able.

## LESSON XVII

### CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

(Gn. 1461, 1505-1506, 1573. H. 910, 925, 979. Gl. 593a,b, 615, 622b, 626, 629, 633d.)

111. *Since* is represented by ὥς, ἐπεί, or ἐπειδή with the indicative. The negative is οὐ.

Since you do not wish to obey me, I shall go with you, ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔσομαι. I. 3. 6.

He bids them send a guard to the bridge, since Tissaphernes intends to destroy it, παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν πέμψαι κελεύει φυλακὴν, ὥς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης. II. 4. 17.

112. *Because* is represented by ὅτι or διότι with the indicative. The negative is οὐ.

He happened to be traveling in a chariot, because he had been wounded, ἐτύγχανεν ἐφ' ἀμάξης πορευόμενος διότι ἐτέρωτο. II. 2. 14.

113. διὰ with the article and the infinitive expresses cause.

Because the road was narrow the march up lasted the whole day, διὰ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἡ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο. IV. 1. 10.

114. A relative clause may be used to express a reason, the particle *γέ* frequently following the relative.

He summoned Clearchus within, because he seemed to him to be the most honored of the Greeks,  
*Κλέαρχον εἶσω παρεκάλεσε, ὃς γε αὐτῷ  
 ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλή-  
 νων.* I. 6. 5.

115. For the participle expressing cause see § 149.

#### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

116. *Although* is expressed by the participle, in agreement either with the subject or the object of the sentence, or with a noun or pronoun in the genitive absolute. *καίπερ* (occasionally *καί*) usually accompanies the participle. The negative is *οὐ*.

Though he continues to send for me, I am not willing to go, *καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν.* I. 3. 10.

We made enemies of the Carduchi, though they were not subjects of the king, *Καρδούχους καίπερ βασιλέως οὐχ ὑπηκόους ὄντας πολεμίους ἐκτησάμεθα.* V. 5. 17.

OBSERVE.—If *although* has a conditional force, and is equivalent to *even if*, *καὶ εἰ* or *κάν*, or, if negative, *οὐδ' εἰ* or *οὐδ' ἐάν* may be used, with the same construction as the regular conditional sentences.

## EXERCISE XVII

*(Anabasis I. 6. 5-9.)*

1. He summoned the Greeks because he wished to consult with them.

2. Clearchus advised that Orontas be arrested, owing to his having injured the territory of Cyrus.

3. Although you were my vassal, you made war on me.

4. Cyrus put the man out of the way, inasmuch as he had tried<sup>1</sup> to desert to the Great King.

5. Although the trial was secret, they announced what<sup>2</sup> took place in the tent.

6. He benefited him, although he was hostile to himself.

7. Cyrus arrested him because he was faithful to his brother.

8. Although the noblest<sup>3</sup> of the Persians were present, Clearchus was the first to express his opinion.

9. Since we recognize our own power we shall give pledges.

10. Such were the words of Orontas; but Cyrus spoke as follows.

---

<sup>1</sup>I. 1. 7.    <sup>2</sup>§7.    <sup>3</sup>I. 6. 4.

## LESSON XVIII

### COMMANDS, PROHIBITIONS, EXHORTATIONS, AND WISHES

(*Gn. 1342-1354, 1507-1513. H. 870-871, 873-875. Gl. 472-473, 476-477, 484-485.*)

117. Commands are expressed by the imperative. For the tenses see § 59.

Speak, λέγε.

Hear my words, ἀκούσατε τοὺς λόγους μου.

Let him hold up his hand, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα.

118. Prohibitions (negative commands) are expressed by μή (or its compounds) with the present imperative, if the reference is to a continued act; with the aorist subjunctive, if the reference is to a single definite act.

Do not keep on doing this, μὴ ποίει τοῦτο.

Do not do this, μὴ ποιήσης τοῦτο.

Do not wage an unjust war, μὴ πολεμεῖτε ἄδικον πόλεμον.

Let no one suppose, μηδεὶς οἰέσθω.

119. Exhortations are expressed by the first person of the subjunctive. The negative is μή. For the tenses see § 59.

Let us die gloriously, *καλῶς ἀποθνήσκωμεν.*

III. 2. 3.

Let us never become subject to the enemy, *ὑποχείριοι μηδέποτε γενώμεθα τοῖς πολεμίοις.*

III. 2. 3.

#### WISHES

120. Possible wishes, that is, those that refer to the future, are expressed by the optative with or without *εἴθε* or *εἰ γάρ*. The negative is *μή*.

May many good things befall me, *πολλά μοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο.* V. 6. 4.

Would that you may become friendly to us, *εἴθε σὺ φίλος ἡμῖν γένοιο.*

May I live no longer, *μηκέτι ζήην.*

121. An impossible wish is expressed by *εἴθε* or *εἰ γάρ* with the imperfect indicative, if it refers to the present time; with the aorist indicative, if it refers to past time. The negative is *μή*.

Would that I had met you then, *εἴθε σοι τότε συνεγενόμην.*

122. An impossible wish is also expressed by *ὄφελον* (aorist indicative of *ὀφείλω*, *owe*) with the present infinitive to refer to present time,



and the aorist infinitive to refer to past time.  
The negative is μή.

Would that Cyrus were now alive, ὥφελε Κῦρος  
ζῆν. II. 1. 4. (*Lit.*, Cyrus ought now to be  
alive.)

### EXERCISE XVIII

(*Anabasis I. 6. 10-7. 3.*)

1. Let him be led to death on the following day.
2. Would that he had not died!
3. May the king not come to fight at midnight.
4. O that<sup>1</sup> they may be worthy of their freedom!
5. Do not make a review of the allies in this plain.
6. Never<sup>2</sup> prefer power to freedom.
7. Let us not salute him and his relatives.
8. May no one ever see him alive!
9. Stand up and encourage the others.
10. Would that Cyrus had not led the left wing:

---

<sup>1</sup> O that, *εἴθε*. <sup>2</sup> Page 45, note 1.

## LESSON XIX

### INDIRECT QUOTATION OF SIMPLE SENTENCES

(*Gn.* 1487-1493. *H.* 928-936. *Gl.* 622, 624, 635.)

123. Indirect quotations are expressed by

- (a) *ὡς* or *ὅτι* with the finite moods.
- (b) The infinitive with accusative as subject.
- (c) The participle and accusative.

124. *ὡς* and *ὅτι* correspond to *that* in English. After a primary tense no change takes place in either the mood or tense of the verb.

And no one will ever say that I preferred the friendship of the barbarians, *καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδείς, ὡς ἐγὼ τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην.* I. 3. 5.

125. After a secondary tense the original mood and tense may be retained, or the mood may be changed to the optative of the same tense.

He shouted that the king was approaching, *ἐβόα ὅτι βασιλεὺς προσέρχεται.* I. 8. 1. (*The mood and tense used by the speaker are retained.*)

He said that the expedition would be against the great king in Babylon, ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα.

I. 4. 11. (*The future optative represents the original future indicative.*)

A messenger brought word that Syennesis had abandoned the heights, ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Σύννεσις τὰ ἄκρα. I. 2. 21.

(*The perfect optative represents the original perfect indicative.*)

126. If ἄν occurs with either the indicative or the optative, it is retained in indirect discourse after both primary and secondary tenses.

They said that thus they would obtain safety, εἶπον ὅτι οὕτω σωτηρίας ἂν τύχοιεν.

127. When a quotation depends on a participle, the sequence is determined by the tense of the verb to which the participle refers. (See § 125, example 3.) The historical present is usually treated as a secondary tense. (§ 47.)

#### EXERCISE XIX

(*Anabasis I. 7. 4-10.*)

N. B. Use ὥς or ὅτι only.

1. They say that you will not remember these things.
2. He said that they were advancing with a loud shout.

3. He announced that he would give each a golden crown.

4. They heard that he had obtained his father's realm without a battle.

5. They knew that Cyrus would not have given all these things.

6. He said that his friends would be masters of the country.

7. He wrote a letter<sup>1</sup> to the king, that the Greeks were bolder<sup>2</sup> than the barbarians.

8. He said that he was not afraid that he would not have sufficient funds.

9. I know that you would endure this contest.

10. He reports that the Greeks have conquered.

<sup>1</sup>I. 6. 3.

<sup>2</sup>I. 7. 3.

## LESSON XX

### INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(Gn. 1494-1496, 1523, 1588-1593. H. 946, 982. Gl. 571, 577-578, 586-588.)

128. Verbs of *thinking* (οἶμαι, νομίζω, and ἡγοῦμαι) regularly take the infinitive in indirect discourse. Verbs of *saying* take the following constructions: φημί takes the infinitive (οὐ φημί means *refuse*); λέγω in the active generally takes ὡς or ὅτι, in the passive, the infinitive; εἶπον takes ὡς or ὅτι. The tense of the infinitive corresponds to the tense of the direct form: the present represents both the present and the imperfect; and the perfect, both the perfect and the pluperfect. If ἄν occurred in the original statement, it is retained with the infinitive. The negative is οὐ.

He considers that you are in his power, νομίζει ὑμᾶς ἐαυτοῦ εἶναι. II. 1. 11.

Do you think they would be afraid? οἶει ἂν φοβεῖσθαι αὐτούς; VII. 7. 30.

129. Observe that after δοκεῖ and the passive

of λέγω, the aorist infinitive represents the English perfect infinitive.

She was said to have given Cyrus money, ἐλέγετο δοῦναι Κύρῳ χρήματα. I. 2. 12.

Clearchus seems to have been warlike, Κλέαρχος δοκεῖ γενέσθαι πολεμικός.

130. Closely akin to the infinitive in indirect discourse is the infinitive (regularly future) with ἐλπίζω, hope, and ὑπισχνέομαι, promise. The negative is μή.

He promised not to stop until he restored them, ὑπέσχετο μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγει. I. 2. 2.

131. When the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the main verb, the nominative is used instead of the accusative. But unless emphasis is required, the subject is omitted, and predicate adjectives or nouns are put in the nominative.

He says that he himself cured the wound, ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. I. 8. 26.

(The present infinitive is here the equivalent of an original imperfect indicative. § 129.)

And with you, I think I should be honored, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος. I. 3. 6.

## THE PARTICIPLE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

132. The participle and accusative are generally used with the following verbs, though *ὡς* or *ὅτι*, or the infinitive, also occur :

*γινώσκω* and *οἶδα*, know  
*καταμανθάνω*, observe  
*αἰσθάνομαι*, perceive  
*ἀκούω*, hear  
*ὁρῶ*, see  
*πυνθάνομαι*, learn  
*ἀγγέλλω*, announce

133. The tense of the participle is the same as the tense of the original. If *ἄν* occurred, it is retained with the participle. The negative is *οὐ*.

When the Greeks saw that the barbarians were not advancing, they were glad, *ἐπειδὴ τοὺς βαρβάρους οὐ προσιόντας ἐώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἤσθησαν*.

I knew that in this way you would procure the provisions, *ἤδειν ὑμᾶς οὕτως ἂν πορίζομένους τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*.

134. When the participle refers to the subject of the main verb, it is put in the nominative instead of the accusative.

I observed that I arose with difficulty, *κατέμαθον ἀναστὰς μόλις*. V. 8. 14.

## 135. Observe the following idioms :

It was clear that Cyrus was annoyed, δῆλος ἦν  
Κῦρος ἀνιώμενος. I. 2. 11.

It is manifest that he is plotting against us,  
ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστι.

I appear to be doing wrong, φαίνομαι ἀδικεῖν.

I am clearly doing wrong, φαίνομαι ἀδικῶν.

I am conscious of having deceived him, σύννοια  
ἐμαντῶ ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν. I. 3. 10.

## EXERCISE XX

(*Anabasis* I. 7. 11-16.)

N. B. Use participle or infinitive only.

1. He says that an enumeration of the Greeks has been made.
2. Four commanders are said to have been present at the battle.
3. We think that the king will not fight for ten days.
4. Artaxerxes says that he led the cavalry himself.
5. They learned that the troops had been drawn up in front of the wall.
6. We perceive that we have come too late for the battle.
7. I observed that the passage was narrow.
8. I think we should not be honored in the camp.
9. The deserters announced that the Great King had made this ditch for a defence.
10. They saw vessels sailing in the river.



## LESSON XXI

### INDIRECT QUOTATION OF COMPLEX SENTENCES

(*Gn.* 1497-1501. *H.* 931-936. *Gl.* 624, 662-664.)

136. Subordinate clauses retain their verbs in the original mood and tense after a primary tense. After a secondary tense, also, dependent clauses may be quoted without change of mood or tense. But after a secondary tense primary tenses of the indicative and all subjunctives in the subordinate clause may be changed to the optative of the same tense. Secondary tenses of the indicative in subordinate clauses are retained without change after both primary and secondary tenses.

These reported that Ariaëus was at the stopping-place, whence they had set out the preceding day, οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Ἀριαῖος ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἶη ὅθεν τῇ προτεραίᾳ ὤρμηντο. II. 1. 3.

OBSERVE.—Before translating an indirect quotation, one should find the tense of the direct form. This will always be the correct tense to use. The mood can easily be determined by the rule.

137. When the subjunctive with ἄν in a subordinate clause is changed to an optative, ἄν

is dropped; *ἐάν* becomes *εἰ*, and *ὅταν* and *ἐπειδάν* become *ὅτε* and *ἐπειδή* (§ 86).

They vowed to make thank-offering for their safety as soon as they should reach a friendly country, *εὐξάντο σωτήρια θύσειν ἔνθα πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν γῆν ἀφίκοντο*. V. 1. 1. (*ἔνθα . . . ἀφίκοντο* represents *ἐνθ' ἂν . . . ἀφικώμεθα* of direct discourse.)

He thought that the faster he went the more unprepared he would fight the king, *ἐνόμιζεν ὅσῳ θάπτον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευ-  
οτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι*. I. 5. 9. (*Direct form: ὅσῳ ἂν . . . ἔλθω . . . μαχοῦμαι*.)

138. In indirect quotation of conditional sentences, the apodosis usually prefers the infinitive to *ὡς* or *ὅτι* (§ 123). After a secondary tense, the verb of the protasis, if a primary tense of the indicative or any tense of the subjunctive, may be changed to the optative (*ἐάν* becomes *εἰ*); but, if it is a secondary tense of the indicative or an optative, it is unchanged.

(1) Simple present and past conditions (§ 91).

He said that he did not praise Dexippus if he had done that, *εἶπεν ὅτι Δέξιππον οὐκ ἐπαινοίη, εἰ ταῦτα πεποιηκὼς εἶη*. VI. 6. 25. (*Direct form: οὐκ ἐπαινῶ . . . εἰ πεποίηκε*.)

## (2) Unreal conditions (§ 92).

He said that they would have done this had it been possible, *ἔφη αὐτοὺς ταῦτα ἂν ποιῆσαι εἰ ἐξῆν.* (*Direct form: ἂν ἐποίησαν . . . εἰ ἐξῆν.*)

## (3) Vivid future condition (§ 94).

He promised that if he came he would make him a friend to Cyrus, *ὑπισχνεῖτο εἰ ἔλθοι φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσιν.* III. 1. 4. (*Direct form: ἐὰν ἔλθῃς . . . ποιήσω.*)

## (4) Less vivid future conditions (§ 96).

They thought that if they elected a single commander he would be better able to make use of the army, *ἡγήσαντο εἰ ἓνα ἔλουντο ἄρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἂν δύνασθαι χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι.* VI. 1. 18. (*Direct form: εἰ ἐλοίμεθα . . . ἂν δύναιτο.*)

**OBSERVE.**—The presence of *ἂν* with the infinitive alone distinguishes (4) from (3). The distinction between (2) and (4), both of which have *ἂν* with the infinitive, is in the protasis, which remains the same as it was in the direct form.

## EXERCISE XXI

(*Anabasis* I. 7. 17-8. 3.)

## A

1. He said he would give him ten talents if he told the truth.

2. They thought that, if the enemy had not retreated, Cyrus would be attacking them.

3. He shouted out that the troops he met were in disorder.

4. It is clear that Cyrus mounted his horse.

5. I learned that Cyrus marched with his army in disorder until the ten days elapsed.

6. They said that the king was approaching the station where they intended to halt.

7. He announced that, when the army heard this, great confusion arose.

8. He said that, if the king did not prevent the Greeks crossing, he had retreated.

9. He promised not to attack the king until they should be prepared for battle.

10. He ordered all to arm themselves whenever a messenger<sup>1</sup> appeared.

## B

Quote indirectly after λέγει and ἔλεξε, and after φησί and ἔφη, the examples in §§ 91, 92, 94, 95, and 96.

---

<sup>1</sup>I. 2. 21.

## LESSON XXII

### VIRTUAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

(*Gn.* 1490, 1502, 1605-1606. *H.* 700, 937, 1016-1017. *Gl.* 655, 661.)

139. After verbs expressing wish, command, advice, or emotion in a secondary tense, dependent clauses may take the optative.

They pitied them in case they should be captured,  
*ᾧκτιρον εἰ ἀλώσوينτο.* I. 4. 7.

They ordered whatever general or captain there  
was to come forward, *προσελθεῖν ἐκέλευον εἰ  
τις εἴη στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγός.* II. 5. 36.

140. Causal clauses which assign the cause as that of the subject at some past time, may take the optative.

He was angry because Proxenus spoke lightly of  
his ill-treatment, *ἐχάλέπαινεν ὅτι Πρόξενος  
πρῶως λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος.* I. 5. 14.

141. Clauses dependent upon a past purpose may in the same way take the optative.

Cyrus sent for the ships in order that he might  
disembark the troops, in case the enemy should  
be keeping guard, *Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμ-*

ψατο ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἰ οἱ  
πολέμιοι φυλάττοιεν. I. 4. 5.

142. Certain conditional clauses represent *in the hope that*.

I hastened, in the hope that I might be first,  
ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον εἰ δυναίμην φθάσαι. IV. 1. 21.

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

143. While the indirect forms of the interrogative pronouns and adverbs, which are the same as the corresponding relative pronouns and adverbs (Gn. 429-430, 436. H. 282-283. Gl. 227, 236), are regularly substituted for the direct forms, the direct forms are quite common in indirect questions.

After a primary verb, the original mood and tense are retained ; after a secondary verb, the original tense is always retained, but the mood may be changed to the optative of the same tense.

144. An indirect question in Greek is often the equivalent of a substantive in English.

- (a) In order that neither the numbers nor the position of the guards might be seen, ὅπως οἱ φύλακες μὴ ὀρῶντο μήτε ὀπόσοι μήτε ὅπου εἶεν. VII. 2. 18.

- (b) They will not have a place of refuge, οὐχ ἔξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν (*cf.* § 29). II. 4. 20.
- (c) Clearchus asked the messenger the size of the country, Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον πόση εἴη ἡ χώρα. II. 4. 21.
- (d) I cannot sleep, seeing the circumstances in which we are, οὐ καθεύδειν δύναμαι ὄρων ἐν οἷοις ἐσμέν. III. 1. 15.
- (e) Nor did anyone ever tell the manner of his death, οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς ἔλεγεν. I. 6. 11.
- (f) And I will tell you the source of my information regarding you, καὶ σοὶ δηλώσω, ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω. II. 5. 26.
- (g) They wondered what their intention was, ἐθαύμαζον τί ἐν νῷ ἔχοιεν. III. 5. 13.
- (h) Observing closely the character of their country, διαθεώμενος οἶαν χώραν ἔχοιεν. III. 1. 19.
- (i) Being asked of what country he was, ἐρωτώμενος ποδαπὸς εἴη. IV. 4. 17.
- (j) Hearing how Seuthes fared, many came down to join him in his expedition, ἀκούοντες ἃ πράττει ὁ Σεύθης πολλοὶ κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. VII. 4. 21.

145. (1) *Whether*, in an indirect question, is expressed by *εἰ*. The negative is *μή* or *οὐ*.

He asked whether he had any orders, ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι. I. 8. 15.

- (2) *Whether*.—*or*, in an indirect question is *πότερον*—ἢ and sometimes *εἵτε*—*εἵτε* or *εἰ*—ἢ. The negative is *μή* or *οὐ*.

He considered whether it was better to lead back those who had crossed, or to take the hoplites across, too, ἐσκοπεῖτο, πότερον εἴη κρεῖττον ἀπάγειν τοὺς διαβεβηκότας ἢ καὶ τοὺς ὀπίστας διαβιβάζειν. V. 2. 8.

## EXERCISE XXII

(*Anabasis* I. 8. 4-11.)

1. He ordered the Greeks to fall in as soon as possible.

2. The barbarians employed scythe-bearing chariots in the hope of breaking through the ranks.

3. The Greeks fell in hurriedly in order that, if the enemy appeared, they might be ready for battle.<sup>1</sup>

4. He asked whether Tissaphernes led the cavalry.

5. After the battle the prisoners reported the number of the enemy.

6. Xenophon tells us how the enemy were drawn up.

7. Cyrus knew the position of his brother.

8. They did not know whether the whole<sup>2</sup> army, or only the cavalry, was coming up.

9. In the afternoon a cloud of dust appeared; shortly after, the spears flashed.

10. Cyrus was bare-headed, but the rest had helmets.

---

<sup>1</sup>I. 8. 1.      <sup>2</sup>I. 2. 17.



## LESSON XXIII

### THE PARTICIPLE

(*Gn.* 1557-1587. *H.* 965-986. *Gl.* 580-595.)

146. The participle without the article is indefinite when used substantively. For the participle with the article see § 7.

He proposed to send some men to occupy the heights beforehand, *εἶπε πέμψαι προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα*. I. 3. 14.

147. Frequently the participle is used like an adjective or an adverbial phrase.

An inhabited city, *πόλις οἰκουμένη*.

Neither would you get off with impunity, *οὔτε χαίροντες ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε*. V. 6. 32.

At last he grew angry, *τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαιεν*. IV. 5. 16.

148. The participle is extensively used to express cause, purpose, condition, concession, time, and means. If the noun or pronoun to which the participle is attached does not appear elsewhere in the sentence, the participle and the noun or pronoun are in the genitive absolute.

The tenses of the participle denote time relatively to that of the main verb.

149. Cause: To the simple causal participle *ᾗτε* is often added to emphasize the causal relation.

He was not at all annoyed because they were at war, *οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων*.

I. 1. 8.

For the Colchians, inasmuch as they had been driven from their homes, were collected in large numbers, *οἱ γὰρ Κόλχοι, ᾗτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκῶν, πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἀθρόοι*. V. 2. 1.

150. Alleged cause: By combining *ὥς* with the causal participle, the writer can show that the reason is that given by the main subject. In this way the alleged reason is expressed.

He ordered Proxenus to be present, alleging that he wished to make an expedition against the Pisidians, *Πρόξενον ἐκέλευσε παραγενέσθαι, ὥς εἰς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι*.

I. 1. 11.

151. Purpose: The future participle may express purpose. The avowed purpose is expressed by adding *ὥς*.

And he arrested Cyrus with the avowed intention of putting him to death, *ὁ δὲ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὥς ἀποκτενῶν*. I. 1. 3.

152. Means : The participle in agreement with the subject may express means.

I took vengeance by driving them from the Chersonese, ἐτιμωρούμην αὐτοὺς ἐξελαύνων ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου. I. 3. 4.

153. Condition : The protasis of a conditional sentence is often a participle. The tense is always the same as if a verb in the indicative, optative, or subjunctive had been used.

If we should follow under these circumstances, we should follow him as friends, οὕτω ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ ἐποίμεθα. I. 3. 19.

154. Observe that *as if* is represented by ὥσπερ with the participle. The negative is οὐ.

(a) In agreement with the main subject.

They danced as if they were showing off to others, ὠρχοῦντο ὥσπερ ἄλλοις ἐπιδεικνύμενοι. V. 4. 34.

(b) In the genitive absolute.

As if Cyrus were making his expedition back, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου. I. 3. 16.

(c) In the accusative absolute in the case of impersonal verbs.

As if it were permitted us to live in quiet, ὥσπερ ἐξὸν ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν. III. 1. 13.

(d) With the omission of the participle of the verb *to be*.

As if in anger, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ. I. 5. 8.

155. Concession : For examples see § 116.

156. Time : The participle is equivalent to clauses with *when*, *as*, or *while*.

Some said they were cut to pieces while engaged in some act of plunder, οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι. I. 2. 25.

As they advanced tracks of horses appeared, προΐόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνια ἵππων. I. 6. 1.

157. The adverbs ἄμα, μεταξύ, and εὐθύς are often added to the temporal participle.

As they fled at the same time they inflicted wounds, φεύγοντες ἄμα ἐτίρωσκον. III. 3. 10.

Interrupting him in the midst of his discourse, he spoke as follows, μεταξύ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν ὧδε. III. 1. 27.

As soon as Proxenus led his men into the center, he halted under arms, ὁ Πρόξενος εὐθύς εἰς τὸ μέσον ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα. I. 5. 14.

Even from childhood, εὐθύς παῖδες ὄντες. I. 9. 4.

158. The negative of the participle is οὐ, except when it has a conditional force, then the negative is μή.

He who does not wish, ὁ οὐ βουλόμενος.

Whoever does not wish, ὁ μὴ βουλόμενος.

159. *Without* may be rendered by the participle with οὐ, or, if a condition is implied, with μή.

They said that it was outrageous that Xenophon should sacrifice without communicating with the army (*i.e.*, if he did not), ἔλεγον ὡς δεινὸν εἶη Ξενοφῶντα θύεσθαι μὴ κοινούμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ. V. 6. 27.

He circulated the report that I intended to do these things without persuading you, ἐξήνεγκε τὸν λόγον ὡς ἐγὼ πράττειν ταῦτα διανοοίμην, οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς. V. 6. 29.

160. Observe that the aorist participle regularly occurs where we use the perfect participle or its equivalent. Thus *having heard*, or, *when he had heard*, is invariably ἀκούσας.

161. The participle is regularly used with τυγχάνω, *happen*, λανθάνω, *escape notice*, and φθάνω, *anticipate*, and contains the leading idea of the sentence.

The elder happened to be present (*or*, was present, as it happened), ὁ πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανεν. I. 1. 2.

They reached the height before the enemy (*lit.*, anticipated the enemy in reaching the height),

φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους. III. 4. 49.

This army in turn was in this way supported for him secretly (*lit.*, escaped notice being supported), τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. I. 1. 9.

162. The aorist participle with λανθάνω, τυγχάνω, and φθάνω does not usually denote past time, but indicates the same time as the verb. Time prior to the time of the verb is expressed by the perfect.

He happened to have a married daughter there (*lit.*, it happened that his daughter had been given in marriage there), ἐτύγχανε αὐτῷ θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη. IV. 1. 24.

163. Observe the following uses of the participle :

She was astonished to see, ἰδοῦσα ἐθαύμασεν. I. 2. 18.

He was delighted to see, ἥσθη ἰδών. I. 2. 18.

Therefore the soldiers continued to eat meat, κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίνοντο. I. 5. 6.

He continued to speak hopefully, ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διήγεν. I. 2. 11.

I am weary of packing up, ἀπείρηκα (*perf. of ἀπαγορεύω*) συσκευαζόμενος. V. 1. 2.

I never ceased pitying ourselves, οὔποτε ἐπανόμην ἡμᾶς οἰκτίρων. III. 1. 19.

You do wrong in plundering our villages, ἀδικεῖτε τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας πορθοῦντες. VII. 7. 3.

### EXERCISE XXIII

(*Anabasis I. 8. 12-20.*)

1. Clearchus refused to lead his men against the compact body in the center, on the ground that he did not wish to be surrounded.

2. They advanced as if they were already<sup>1</sup> victorious.

3. As Cyrus was riding along the watchword happened to be passing down the line.

4. The Greeks outstripped the rest in going to meet the enemy.

5. The barbarians continued to advance evenly and silently.

6. They never ceased shouting.

7. Clearchus could not obey Cyrus without being surrounded.

8. As they pursued they raised the paean.

9. They caused terror to the horses by striking their spears against their shields.

10. At last they fled without awaiting<sup>2</sup> the enemy.

11. They said that many fled secretly.

12. The watchword passed along without the knowledge<sup>3</sup> of Cyrus.

---

<sup>1</sup>I. 2. 1.    <sup>2</sup>μένω (accusative).    <sup>3</sup>Use λαμβάνω.

## LESSON XXIV

### MUST, OUGHT, AND MAY

(*Gn.* 998, 1161-1162, 1594-1599. *H.* 949, 952, 988-992. *Gl.* 596.)

164. The verbal in *-τέος* is passive and expresses necessity or obligation. When used personally it agrees with the subject, like the Latin gerundive. The personal construction is possible only with the transitive verbs. The agent is expressed by the dative.

We must cross a river, *ποταμὸς ἡμῖν ἐστὶ διαβατέος*. II. 4. 6. (*Lit.*, a river must be crossed by us.)

The place must be taken, *τὸ χωρίον αἰρετέον*.  
IV. 7. 3.

165. The verbal is more usual in the impersonal construction. If the verb governs the genitive or dative, the impersonal construction must be used—in the nominative singular neuter, with or without *ἐστι*, governing the same case as the verb. Thus, though passive in form, it is really active in sense. The agent is expressed by the dative.

Clearchus must be obeyed, *πειστέον ἐστὶ Κλεάρχῳ*. II. 6. 8.



We must march the first stages, *πορευτέον ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμούς*. II. 2. 12.

The journey must be made on foot, *τὴν πορείαν πεζῇ ποιητέον*. VI. 4. 12.

166. The verbal may include the meaning of both the active and the middle voice.

Clearchus must be persuaded (obeyed), *πειστέον τὸν Κλέαρχον (τῷ Κλεάρχῳ)*.

167. The following are the more usual verbals :

*αἰρετέος*, must be taken, *or* must be chosen

*διωκτέος*, must be pursued

*διαβατέος*, must be crossed

*λεκτέος*, must be said

*ποιητέος*, must be done

*πορευτέος*, must march

*σκεπτέος*, must be considered

*ιτέον*, must go

*μεταπεμπτέος*, must be sent for

*ἐπιθυμητέος*, must be desired (*with genitive*)

*τιμητέος*, must be honored

168. Necessity is expressed also by *ἀνάγκη*, with or without *ἔστι*, with the accusative (or the dative) and the infinitive. The negative is *μή*.

If we desire to enter into friendship with them, we must be very faint-hearted, *εἰ βουλόμεθα αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν*. III. 2. 8.

It is necessary for me to be with you, ἀνάγκη  
μοι μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. I. 3. 5.

169. Necessity is also expressed by δεῖ or χρῆ with the accusative and the infinitive. The negative is μή.

They had to cross a ravine, χαράδραν ἔδει  
αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι. III. 4. 1.

We ought not yet to let it appear that we have set  
out for home, ἡμᾶς χρῆ μὴπω φανεροὺς  
εἶναι οἴκαδε ὥρμημένους. III. 2. 24.

170. *May* is expressed by ἔξεστιν (*it is allowed, or it is possible*) with the dative and the infinitive.

You may receive the pledges from us, ἔξεστιν  
ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν. II. 3. 26.

#### EXERCISE XXIV

(*Anabasis I. 8. 21-29.*)

1. Cyrus thinks that the cavalry must pursue the center of the Persian army.
2. All men ought to desire fidelity.
3. The Greeks must be sent for.
4. Generals ought to be in safety.
5. We must put the enemy to flight.
6. Cyrus was afraid that he would be left behind.
7. Cyrus ought to have restrained himself.
8. The wound may be cured.
9. We must conquer the enemy.
10. Artapates ought not to have leaped from his horse.

## LESSON XXV

### NEGATIVES AND PARTICLES

(*Gn.* 1360, 1618-1619. *H.* 1030-1048. *Gl.* 487, 489, 665-673.)

171. Two simple negatives (*οὐ* or *μή*), referring to the same word or expression, make an affirmative, just as in English.

For it was (not) in accordance with the disposition of Cyrus (not) to pay, if he had money, *οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι.* I. 2. 11.

172. The subjunctive and the future indicative with *οὐ μή* are sometimes used as emphatic (negative) futures.

The king will no longer be able to overtake us, *οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν.* II. 2. 12.

173. When a simple negative is followed by one or more compound negatives, the result is a strong negation.

(a) *Any one* or *any*, in a negative sentence, is translated by *οὐδεὶς* or *μηδεὶς*.

Nor did any one else of the Greeks receive any injury in this battle, *οὐδ' ἄλλος τῶν Ἑλλήνων*

ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν.

I. 8. 20. (*Observe the three negatives.*)

- (b) A sentence containing *neither* — *nor* may be further negated in Greek by the use of some other negative.

Without these neither a general nor a private is any use, ἄνευ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ιδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. I. 3. 11.

- (c) *Ever*, in a negative sentence, becomes *never*.

And no one will ever say, οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς.

I. 3. 5.

- (d) *Either* — *or*, in a negative sentence, becomes *neither* — *nor*.

Without commanders there would be nothing either glorious or good anywhere, ἄνευ ἀρχόντων οὐδέν ἂν οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο οὐδαμοῦ. III. 1. 38.

#### 174. οὐδέ

- (a) As a conjunction, follows a simple negative and is translated *nor*, *nor yet*.

But since you are not willing to obey me, nor yet to follow me, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι οὐδ' ἔπεισθαι. I. 3. 6.

- (b) As an adverb, is equivalent to *not even*, *not—either*, *not at all*.

But not even there did any one hear that he was leading them against the king, ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς.

I. 3. 21.

175. The negative with the infinitive is μή, except in indirect discourse.

I advise you not to give up your arms, συμβουλεύω μή παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα.

II. 1. 19.

OBSERVE.—οὐδέν, neuter of οὐδεὶς, is used as an adverbial accusative, in the sense of *in no respect*. μηδέν is used in the same way.

#### THE PARTICLES

176. The connection between sentences, which is not always indicated in English, is almost invariably expressed in Greek by connective particles.

177. There are several regular exceptions to this rule:

- (a) Speeches, unless in answer to previous statements, are begun without a connective.
- (b) The demonstrative οὗτος frequently occurs at the beginning of a sentence and does duty as a connective (I. 2. 6).

- (c) *ἐνταῦθα* and *ἐντεῦθεν* always stand first and are not as a rule followed by a connective.

178. The connective most frequently used is \**δέ*. Properly, it has an adversative force and corresponds to a previous \**μέν*, *on the one hand*, in the sense of *on the other hand*. But it is widely employed where the connection is not marked enough to warrant the use of any other conjunction. It is not unusual to find several successive sentences joined in this way (I. 3. 21). The regular position of *δέ* is second or third in the clause.

179. *ἀλλά*, *but*, is an adversative conjunction, and is generally used after a negative (I. 1. 4). In a speech it often means *well*, or *for my part* (I. 8. 17).

180. (a) *καί*, *and*, connects sentences where there is no opposition.

- (b) *καί—δέ* or *δέ—καί* means *and also*.

And he appointed him general also, *καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξεν*. I. 1. 2.

- (c) The negative of this is *οὐδέ—δέ*, *and also not*, *not—either, but not* (I. 8. 20).

---

\* Can not stand first in the sentence.

(d) *καί—καί* means *both—and*.

Both by land and by sea, *καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν*. I. 1. 7.

(e) *\*τέ—καί*, with or without intervening words, denotes a closer connection than *καί—καί*.

He is said to have built both this palace and the acropolis, *λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασιλεια καὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν*. I. 2. 9.

(f) *καί* means *even, also, too* (I. 3. 13).

181. Where there is a contrast between words or clauses, it is emphasized by *μέν* and *δέ*, *on the one hand—on the other*.

Darius and Parysatis had two sons, Artaxerxes, the elder, and Cyrus, the younger, *Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος*. I. 1. 1.

182. As a rule, English makes no attempt to bring out this contrast, but sometimes it is indicated by *while*, introducing the second member, when the former has a slight concessive tone. *The numbers of his allies were increased, while the supply of money decreased.*

---

\* Can not stand first in the sentence.

183. \**ἄρα* and \**οὖν*, *therefore*, \**τοίνυν*, *accordingly*, and *ὥστε*, *and so, so that*, are the usual particles of inference.

(a) \**μὲν οὖν*, in the sense of *now*, is used to continue the narrative (I. 1. 2). In this combination *μὲν* may, or may not, have its usual force and be followed by *δέ*.

(b) \**μὲν οὖν* is also a strong affirmation, *nay rather*.

184. \**δ' οὖν* means *at all events, at any rate* (I. 2. 12, I. 3. 5).

185. \**δή*, referring to a single word, gives greater exactness.

And one in particular, *εἰς δὲ δή*. I. 3. 14.

And just at that time, *καὶ δὴ τότε*. I. 8. 23.

Chariots, those particular ones called "scythe-bearers," *ἄρματα τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα*. I. 8. 10.

186. (a) \**δή*, referring to a whole sentence, sometimes preceded by *μὲν*, continues the narrative like *μὲν οὖν, so, so then* (I. 4. 13).

(b) \**δή* is often equivalent to *indeed, surely, of course, you know* (I. 3. 5).

---

\* Can not stand first in the sentence.



187. \**αὐ*, usually preceded by *δέ*, means *more-over, again, besides, in turn* (I. 1. 7, I. 1. 9).

188. \**μέντοι*, *however, nevertheless* (I. 3. 10, I. 4. 8).

189. *ὁμως* (stronger than *μέντοι*), *nevertheless, however* (I. 3. 21, I. 8. 23).

190. *ἦ*, *truly, certainly* (I. 6. 8).

191. *ἦ μήν*, *in very truth* (II. 3. 26).

192. *καίτοι*, *and further, and yet* (I. 4. 8).

193. \**γάρ*, *for*, is often preceded by *καί*. Then there is an ellipsis: e.g., *And (no wonder) for* (I. 1. 6).

194. *νῦν*, *now* (of present time); *ἤδη*, *now* (of immediate past or future time), *already, at length, forthwith* (I. 2. 1, I. 4. 14).

195. *οὐ μόνον—ἀλλὰ καί*, *not only—but also*.

196. *πρῶτον μὲν—εἶτα δέ*, *in the first place—in the second place; τότε μὲν—ὕστερον δέ*, *then—but afterward*.

197. \**γέ* is intensive and restrictive: *at least, really*. It is often added to conjunctions (I. 3. 9, I. 3. 21).

198. Observe that *μὲν* does not refer to what precedes, and therefore can not be used to establish connection.

---

\* Can not stand first in the sentence.

## MISCELLANEOUS HINTS

199. The most striking characteristic of the style of Xenophon is the simplicity and directness of the language. There is no striving after effect, no piling up of epithets, and few metaphorical and picturesque expressions occur. This concrete character of Greek prose, so noticeable in reading, is exceedingly difficult to imitate in writing. English is so full of metaphorical, picturesque, and abstract expressions, that a literal rendering into Greek of even ordinary narrative is often quite impossible. The best rule is to think of the sense of the English passage, rather than the form of it; for it is ideas, not words, that are to be translated. When the sense of a phrase or passage is expressed in simple concrete language, it can usually be translated literally into Greek.

200. In dealing with individual words the Greek equivalents of which do not readily occur to the mind, it is always helpful to think of the synonyms of the word in question. Very frequently one or other of the English equivalents will suggest the proper Greek word.

201. A Greek writer represents persons as acting rather than things. *The fight continued* would become *they continued fighting*. *The sight thereof gave them great joy* would be *seeing these things they were very glad*.

202. Many names of things have no equivalent in Greek, because the things themselves were unknown to the Greeks. For such words we must substitute others that would convey to a Greek an approximate idea of

what is meant. The Greeks did not have fire-arms, but they had bows, slings, and javelins, so that *gun* may be translated by the word for *bow*. In the same way *wine* will represent our *spirituous liquors*; *barbarians* would be the equivalent of *Indians*; *church* would become *temple*. Exact expressions of time may be rendered by vaguer and less definite expressions; an *hour* is a *short time*.

203. Proper names of places and persons are best turned by using suitable Greek names. In the case of historical passages such names should be used that the passage, when turned into Greek, would be both historically and geographically possible. The practice of using a variety of descriptive titles to avoid the repetition of a proper name, so usual in English, is quite unknown in Greek. Either the name must be repeated whenever it is necessary to refer to the person or a suitable pronoun substituted. (See Ex. XCVII, p. 205.)

## **PART II**

**EXERCISES BASED ON THE ANABASIS I III**

**SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES**

NOTE.—It is highly desirable that the student should become quite familiar with the use of the chief particles in Greek, as indicated in §§176–198, before attempting the following continuous exercises.

But facility and accuracy in the use of the particles can be acquired only by observing the exact force of the particles met with in reading, and by seeking to bring out this force in translation.

## EXERCISES BASED ON THE ANABASIS

### EXERCISE I

(*Anabasis I. 1. 1-6.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Article for Possessive, § 6.
2. Future Participle Expressing Purpose, § 64
3. Object Clauses with *ὅπως*, § 67.
4. Participle Expressing Cause, §§ 149-150.
5. Participle with *τυγχάνω*, § 161.

#### ORAL

#### A. 1-3.

1. Parysatis and her elder son happened to be present.
2. Darius desired his younger son to come up from his province.
3. Xenias, as it happened, was commander of all the hoplites that<sup>1</sup> Cyrus had.
4. Tissaphernes plotted against Cyrus and persuaded Artaxerxes to arrest him.
5. But his mother begged him off with the intention of sending him back to his province.

#### B. 4-6.

6. Cyrus plans to enroll as many men as possible, with the intention of being king instead of his brother.
7. The levy was made on the ground that the Ionian cities were in the power of Tissaphernes.
8. All the cities planned to revolt to Cyrus.
9. He courts the barbarians that<sup>2</sup> they may love him more than the king.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. § 100.      <sup>2</sup> An object clause with *ὅπως*.

10. He enrolled troops with the avowed intention of making war on Tissaphernes.<sup>1</sup>

## WRITTEN

A. 1-3.

Darius desired his elder son to be king, but Cyrus, the younger son, he made satrap of Lydia. Therefore, when the king happened to be sick, Cyrus was not present. But his mother sent for him. Now, Tissaphernes slandered Cyrus with the intention of dishonoring him. But Artaxerxes did not put him to death.

B. 4-6.

When Cyrus returned to the province, he planned that all the barbarians should be friendly to himself.\* The cities were in the power of Tissaphernes. But Cyrus gave attention to them, that<sup>3</sup> they might revolt to him. So he bade the garrison commanders make a levy on the ground that the cities were in danger. So he enrolled Greek hoplites with the avowed intention of plotting against Tissaphernes.

1. τοῦ ἦν Κῦρος;
2. ἄρα μὴ Ἀρταξέρξης τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἀπέκτεινεν;
3. πῶς ὁ Κῦρος ἐποίει τὴν συλλογὴν;

## EXERCISE II

(Anabasis I. 1. 7-11.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Article as a Demonstrative, § 4.
2. Article with Infinitive, § 9.
3. Dative of Possession, § 41.
4. Until after a Negative, § 81.
5. Participle with λαμβάνω, § 161.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.<sup>2</sup> § 18.<sup>3</sup> An object clause with ὅπως.

## ORAL

## A. 7-9.

1. Cyrus had<sup>1</sup> an excuse for making war.
2. They tried to besiege the city by land and sea.
3. Tissaphernes was annoyed because<sup>2</sup> Cyrus restored the fugitives.
4. He met Clearchus, a Lacedaemonian exile.
5. The king thought<sup>3</sup> that Cyrus was sending the tribute.

## B. 9-11.

6. Cyrus secretly<sup>4</sup> gave Clearchus money.
7. He will not make peace with the Thracians until he overcomes them.
8. They asked him for five months' pay for ten thousand men.
9. He begged Proxenus not to collect an army until he consulted Cyrus.
10. The Pisidians were secretly causing trouble to the cities which belonged to Cyrus.

## WRITTEN

## A. 7-9.

Now Tissaphernes banished those who<sup>5</sup> attempted to revolt to Cyrus. The exiles begged Cyrus to take them under his protection. So he had<sup>1</sup> an excuse for besieging Miletus. For he was annoyed because of Tissaphernes's putting many to death. To Clearchus he gave money in order that<sup>6</sup> he might restore the exiles.

## B. 9-11.

Moreover, the Thracians were causing trouble to the Hellespontine cities. Therefore these cities beg Clearchus to aid them. But he is not able to set out until they contribute four months' pay for two thousand men.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use dative of possession.    <sup>2</sup> § 149.    <sup>3</sup> § 128.    <sup>4</sup> Use *λανθάνω*.  
<sup>5</sup> § 7.    <sup>6</sup> § 60.



So he secretly collects an army with the intention of making an expedition against the Thracians. He made peace with some and banished others. But he never<sup>1</sup> killed his opponents until he consulted Cyrus.

1. τίς πρόφασις ἦν Τισσαφέρνει τοῦ πολιορκεῖν Μίλητον;
2. τί οὐκ ᾔσθάνετο βασιλεὺς τὴν ἐπιβουλήν;
3. τίνες ἐπέζον Ἀρίστιππον;

### EXERCISE III

(*Anabasis I. 2. 1-6.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Omission of Antecedent, § 101.
2. Attraction of Relative, § 102.
3. Infinitive in Indirect Discourse, §§ 128-131.
4. Aorist Participle, § 160.
5. Negative with Infinitive, § 175.

#### ORAL

#### A. 1-3.

1. Cyrus trusted those whom he summoned.
2. He promised to restore all who<sup>2</sup> joined him in his expedition.
3. They thought the army was sufficient to drive out the Pisidians.
4. Xenias and Proxenus commanded those who guarded the acropolis.
5. He promised not to make peace with Tissaphernes until he should restore the fugitives.

#### B. 4-6.

6. He resolved<sup>3</sup> not to set out until the others arrived at Sardis.

<sup>1</sup> οὐποτε.

<sup>2</sup> Use σοι.

<sup>3</sup> It seemed good to.

7. They thought the city large and prosperous.
8. Hearing<sup>1</sup> this, Tissaphernes set out (to go) to the king.
9. Having remained there five days, he crossed the Maeander river.
10. The expedition is too great<sup>2</sup> to be against Tissaphernes.

## WRITTEN

## A. 1-3.

Cyrus at length ordered the generals to come to Sardis with as many hoplites as they could collect. He resolved<sup>3</sup> not to restore the exiles until he should return. Therefore they too<sup>4</sup> joined<sup>5</sup> the expedition, for Cyrus promised to besiege Miletus again.<sup>6</sup> Xenias came with whatever troops he had, and Proxenus with the five hundred light-armed troops which he commanded. Since<sup>7</sup> he had not made peace with Tissaphernes, he ordered those whom he trusted to guard the cities.

## B. 4-6.

Now, Tissaphernes thought the expedition too great<sup>8</sup> to be against himself, so he resolved to go up to the king. But Cyrus, starting from Sardis, crossed the Maeander river. Having marched through Phrygia, he arrived at Colossae.

1. ἐβούλετο ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς Πισίδας ἐκβαλεῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας;
2. πόσους ἱππέας ἔχων ἀνέβη Τισσαφέρνης;
3. ποία γέφυρα ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ;

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the aorist participle.    <sup>2</sup> Greater than, § 73.    <sup>3</sup> It seemed good to.    <sup>4</sup> καί.    <sup>5</sup> Made the expedition with Cyrus.  
<sup>6</sup> πάλιν.    <sup>7</sup> § 149.

## EXERCISE IV

(Anabasis I. 2. 7-11.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Article with Demonstrative, § 3.
2. Accusative of Extent of Space, § 30.
3. *When* and *whenever*, §§ 85-87.
4. Aorist Infinitive with λέγεται, § 129.

## ORAL

## A. 7-9.

1. Whenever he hunts he exercises his horse.
2. This river is said to have been called Marsyas.
3. The river rises<sup>1</sup> in the park.
4. Whenever the Great King was defeated, he retreated.
5. When Marsyas quarreled with Apollo he was defeated.

## B. 9-11.

6. When Cyrus was numbering the Greeks, Clearchus came with two hundred archers.
7. He marched three days' journey to a border city<sup>2</sup> of Mysia.
8. It was clear<sup>3</sup> that the soldiers were annoyed.
9. For Cyrus continued to owe them pay.
10. Whenever Cyrus has money, he gives.

## WRITTEN

## A. 7-9.

This river rises<sup>1</sup> in the city of Celaenae and flows through the center<sup>4</sup> of Phrygia. In this city Cyrus had a park. Whenever he exercised his horses he hunted wild animals. Here Apollo is said to have quarreled with Marsyas about musical skill.<sup>5</sup> Marsyas was defeated. The Great King retreated through this city. When he was there he built a fortified palace.

<sup>1</sup> The sources of the river are from.

<sup>2</sup> A certain (τῆς) city.

<sup>3</sup> § 135. <sup>4</sup> μέσος in predicate position; cf. § 11.

<sup>5</sup> σοφία.

## B. 9-11.

It is clear<sup>1</sup> that Cyrus held a review, for he always numbers his troops whenever he remains in a flourishing city. From there he marched five days' journey through a border city of Mysia to Cayster Plain. It was said that Cyrus owed his soldiers three months' pay. At any rate<sup>3</sup> they continued to demand it. So Cyrus was annoyed.

1. ποῦ ἐθήρευν βασιλεὺς ἄγρια θηρία;
2. πόθεν ἦσαν αἱ τοῦ ποταμοῦ πηγαί;
3. πότε ὠκοδόμησε βασιλεὺς τὰ βασίλεια;

## EXERCISE V

(*Anabasis I. 2. 12-18.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Duration of Time, § 30.
2. Aorist for Pluperfect, § 54.
3. *When (after that)*, § 84.
4. Genitive Absolute, § 148.

## ORAL

## A. 12-18.

1. They remained in this city three days.
2. Cyrus begged the generals to draw up their troops.
3. He ordered Clearchus to hold the left.
4. When the other generals had drawn up the barbarians, Cyrus rode past.
5. The Cilician woman displayed her guards to Cyrus.

## B. 16-18.

6. The whole phalanx advanced, to the wonder of the barbarians.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> § 135.

<sup>2</sup> *del.*

<sup>3</sup> § 184.

<sup>4</sup> Genitive absolute.

7. When the barbarians fled from the market-place the Greeks wondered.
8. When all had presented arms the trumpet sounded.
9. When Epyaxa inspected the Greeks each had a purple tunic and a shield.
10. The barbarians were delighted to see<sup>1</sup> the splendor of the army.

## WRITTEN

## A. 12-16.

Cyrus remained three days in a city called Tyriæum. During this time<sup>2</sup> the wife of the Cilician king begged him to marshal the army. So, with the intention of displaying the Greek force, he held a review. The men took their usual<sup>3</sup> places, each commander marshaling his own. Xenias held the center, Menon and Clearchus the wings.

## B. 16-18.

The cavalry was drawn up in squadrons, while<sup>4</sup> the infantry<sup>5</sup> was drawn up in companies. When all had been drawn up, as if for battle, Cyrus and Epyaxa rode past on chariots. The whole army, on the trumpet signal,<sup>6</sup> presented arms, and advanced with a shout to the market-place. The barbarians, on seeing the line advance, fled of their own accord; while<sup>4</sup> the Greeks were delighted when they saw the terror of the barbarians.

1. τίνι ἔδωκε Ἐπύαξα χρήματα;
2. πόσας ἡμέρας ἔμεινε τὸ στράτευμα ἐν Τυριαίῳ;
3. τίνες ἔφυγον;

---

<sup>1</sup> § 163.    <sup>2</sup> I. 2. 10.    <sup>3</sup> As was their custom.    <sup>4</sup> μὲν—δέ; cf. § 182.    <sup>5</sup> πεζοί.    <sup>6</sup> When (the trumpet) sounded.

## EXERCISE VI

*(Anabasis I. 2. 19-23.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Infinitive of Purpose, §63.
2. Simple Conditions, §91.
3. Indirect Discourse with *ἔτι*, §§124-125.
4. Participle in Indirect Discourse, §§132-133.

## ORAL

A. 19-20.

1. The Greeks plundered the hostile countries.
2. Cyrus handed over Megaphernes to Menon to put to death.
3. The king had sent him to plot against Cyrus.

B. 21-23.

4. The army could not enter unless the ships sailed around.
5. A messenger said that the pass was impracticable for an army to enter.
6. They heard that Syennesis would offer opposition.
7. The king perceived that Cyrus had marched up the steep mountains.
8. He heard that the plain is well watered.
9. If they invaded Cilicia, no one was guarding the pass.
10. It was said that the Cilicians had tents on the mountains.

## WRITTEN

A. 19-20.

As the army marched<sup>1</sup> through the center of Lycaonia it plundered the country. Cyrus had intrusted the Cilician queen to Menon to send to Cilicia; but he himself marched through a hostile country to Dana. When the Greeks were there, Cyrus accused a nobleman of being friendly<sup>2</sup> to the king and put him to death.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle.      <sup>2</sup> I. 1. 5.

## B. 21-23.

It was impossible to march up the mountains if any one guarded the pass. Therefore, when Cyrus heard that Syennesis was guarding the narrow pass, he did not try to invade Cilicia. On the following day a messenger told the king that the ships had sailed around. Accordingly he no longer<sup>1</sup> offered opposition. Cyrus, on perceiving that Syennesis had marched down from the heights, marched to the city of<sup>2</sup> Tarsus in<sup>3</sup> Cilicia.

1. πῇ ἐπορεύοντο;
2. τί ἀπέκτεινε Μεγαφέρνην;
3. εἰς ποῖον πεδίου κατέβαινον;

## EXERCISE VII

(*Anabasis* I. 2. 24—3. 3.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Article and Participle, § 7.
2. Idiom with πρῶτος, § 16.
3. *Until* after a Negative, § 80.
4. Construction with φημί, § 128.

## ORAL

## A. 24-27.

1. The inhabitants were unwilling to remain by the sea.
2. The plunderers were left behind.
3. The others said that one hundred hoplites perished in the pass.
4. Cyrus refused to give pledges until he met Syennesis.
5. In their anger<sup>3</sup> they stole many valuable slaves.
6. They did not meet each other until Epyaxa arrived.

---

<sup>1</sup> οὐκέτι.

<sup>2</sup> § 2.

<sup>3</sup> Use a participle.

## B. 1-3.

7. Clearchus was the first to begin the advance.
8. They said they would strike the beasts of burden.
9. At first he was silent; but afterwards he called an assembly.
10. Cyrus spent money on the fugitive.

## WRITTEN

## A. 24-27.

All the inhabitants retired to strongholds when they heard that Cyrus was in Cilicia. Two companies of Greeks were cut to pieces. The others said that they lost<sup>1</sup> their way. At any rate they perished in the pass. The Greeks kidnapped many slaves. And so<sup>2</sup> Syennesis refused to meet Cyrus until he received back all his slaves. Afterwards they exchanged<sup>3</sup> many valuable presents.

## B. 1-3.

When the soldiers knew Clearchus was going against the king, they refused to advance and began to strike<sup>4</sup> him. Now Clearchus wondered, for he did not suspect that they were annoyed about the advance. Moreover,<sup>5</sup> he had been the first to spend on them the money he had<sup>6</sup> received. But afterwards he said that he would hold an assembly.

1. ποῦ ἀπώλουντο οἱ λόχοι;
2. πότε Ἐπύαξα εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο;
3. ἡ Κλέαρχος κατεπετρῶθη;

---

<sup>1</sup> Could not find.    <sup>2</sup> § 183.    <sup>3</sup> Gave and received.    <sup>4</sup> Imperfect.    <sup>5</sup> § 187.    <sup>6</sup> § 54b.



## EXERCISE VIII

*(Anabasis I. 3. 4-8.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Two Accusatives, § 33.
2. *iva* Expressing Purpose, § 60.
3. Virtual Indirect Discourse, § 141.
4. Single Indirect Question, § 145 (1).
5. Conditional Relative Sentences, §§ 103, 106.

## ORAL

## A. 4-5.

1. He tried<sup>1</sup> to take vengeance on them by plundering<sup>2</sup> their land.
2. Clearchus wished them to march with<sup>3</sup> him in order that, if Cyrus called him,<sup>4</sup> he might lead them to him.
3. He tried to deprive them of their money.
4. We do not know whether he will prefer the friendship of Cyrus.
5. I shall do whatever you do.

## B. 6-8.

6. He will undergo whatever we undergo.
7. We think we shall be in honor.
8. I shall benefit whoever is my friend.
9. Cyrus, hearing that more than<sup>5</sup> two thousand soldiers were encamped beside Clearchus, was annoyed.
10. We shall follow you wherever you go.

## WRITTEN

## A. 4-5.

Clearchus, in order that he might, if possible, aid Cyrus, spoke as follows: "Fellow-soldiers, with your assistance<sup>6</sup> I have taken vengeance on the Thracians,

---

§ 52.      <sup>2</sup> § 152.      <sup>3</sup> Express by preposition in composition.  
<sup>4</sup> § 19.      <sup>5</sup> § 35.      <sup>6</sup> *With you.*

who were trying<sup>1</sup> to dispossess the Greeks of their land. So I do not wish to betray you. For you are both friends and native land to me. Whether I shall be honored without you, I know not."

## B. 6-8.

"But with you, I know I shall be capable of doing whatever I wish. Therefore I shall not avail myself of<sup>2</sup> the friendship of the barbarians, but shall go wherever you go, and undergo whatever you undergo." Many other soldiers, when<sup>3</sup> they heard the opinion of Clearchus, took their baggage, in order that they might encamp beside him. But Cyrus was annoyed and perplexed.

1. τί πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησεν;
2. ἄρα οὐ Κλέαρχος τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἶλετο;
3. ποῖ εἰσιν Κλέαρχος;

## EXERCISE IX

(*Anabasis I. 3. 9-14.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Verbs of *Fearing*, §§ 65-66.
2. *While, As long as*, § 76.
3. Vivid Future Conditions, § 94.
4. Commands and Prohibitions, §§ 117-118.
5. *φθάω* with Participle, § 161.

## ORAL

## A. 9-12.

1. Cyrus is afraid that we shall injure him.
2. As long as we follow him he is our paymaster.
3. Do not neglect yourselves, but consider how you will get provisions.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 52.    <sup>2</sup> Use.    <sup>3</sup> Page 102, note 3.

4. While we are here let all consider what<sup>1</sup> is best.
5. He was afraid that we would not remain.

## B. 13-14.

6. Do not neglect generals if you wish to depart.
7. If Cyrus gives us ships we shall sail away.
8. If we do not ask Cyrus<sup>2</sup> for a guide, the enemy will anticipate us in seizing the heights.
9. It is time to purchase provisions if you are in a hurry to sail away.
10. Let each say what he thinks best.

## WRITTEN

## A. 9-12.

"Soldiers, Cyrus is, as you know, a grievous enemy to whosoever injures him; and, although<sup>3</sup> he is no longer your paymaster, he will punish you<sup>4</sup> if he can. As long as we are encamped at no great distance from him, he will consider how he will most easily injure us. And I fear we can not go away safely. Cheer up, however, unless you wish to neglect yourselves."

## B. 13-14.

One man, in particular, arose to point out the difficulties; he pretended to be anxious to choose other generals. "In the first place," said he,<sup>5</sup> "send a man to ask<sup>6</sup> Cyrus for ships. For, if the Cilicians anticipate us in seizing the heights, it will be necessary<sup>7</sup> for us to sail away."

1. τίνι Κῦρος ἢν χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρός;
2. οἷα ἦν ἡ ἀπορία ἀπιέναι;
3. ὥρα ἦν τοῖς Ἑλλησι καθεύδειν;

<sup>1</sup> § 143.<sup>2</sup> Page 104, construction 1.<sup>3</sup> § 116.<sup>4</sup> Dative.<sup>5</sup> Use φημί.<sup>6</sup> Cf. ὅστις—ἀπᾶξει and § 62.<sup>7</sup> I. 3. 5; cf. § 168.

## EXERCISE X

*(Anabasis I. 3. 15-21.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Genitive of Comparison, § 35.
2. Less Vivid Future Conditions, § 96.
3. Potential Optative, § 99.
4. Conditional Relative Sentences, § 107.
5. *As if*, § 154.

## ORAL

## A. 15-18.

1. They wished to elect other generals, as if Clearchus did not know how<sup>1</sup> to rule.
2. It would be foolish to ask Cyrus for triremes.
3. These are more cowardly than those.
4. They would go on board the vessel if Cyrus should wish it.
5. I would obey any one<sup>2</sup> he might send.

## B. 19-21.

6. This enterprise appears more dangerous than the former.
7. They will follow him if he persuades them.
8. He would punish whoever was his enemy.
9. They desired Cyrus to let them off, as if Abrocomas had fled.
10. Unless Cyrus should promise to give more<sup>3</sup> pay, he would not be able to lead them against the king.

## WRITTEN

## A. 15-18.

After him, Clearchus said he would obey any one<sup>2</sup> they might choose. But he knew that they would not choose another. "If he wishes to use us, he would not give us a guide. I should not trust the guide he would

---

<sup>1</sup> Omit.    <sup>2</sup> § 102.    <sup>3</sup> I. 3. 7.

give, and if we should go on board his vessel, what would prevent his sinking us?"

B. 19-21.

"If the expedition should not be more dangerous than the former, we should eagerly<sup>1</sup> accompany him." Thus<sup>2</sup> Clearchus spoke. So they resolved to select suitable persons to report these things to Cyrus. And he replied that Abrocomas, his personal enemy, was at the Euphrates. Therefore they were persuaded to follow, as if Abrocomas were at the river. Nevertheless there was a suspicion that he had fled.

1. τί ἐκώλυνεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν;
2. ποῖ Κῦρος ἐβούλετο ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα;
3. ποῦ ἦν Ἀβροκόμας;

## EXERCISE XI

(*Anabasis* I. 4. 1-5.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *ἔτερος*, § 21.
2. Accusative of Specification, § 31.
3. Dative of Instrument, § 42.
4. Aorist and Imperfect, §§ 50, 54, 56.
5. Causal Sentences, §§ 111-112.

### ORAL

#### A. 1-3.

1. Tamos besieged Miletus with those ships.
2. The river was a plethron wide.
3. Issoi, in Cilicia, is a seaboard city.
4. The mercenaries who revolted from the king amounted<sup>3</sup> to four hundred.
5. The admiral ordered the ships to anchor by the city, since Cyrus was there.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use an adjective.    <sup>2</sup> I. 3. 14; cf. § 23.    <sup>3</sup> I. 2. 9.

## B. 4-5.

6. The king's soldiers guarded both gates.
7. In order to force a passage<sup>1</sup> Cyrus disembarked a numerous army.
8. Abrocomas turned back because he heard that Cyrus was within the outer wall.
9. They thought they would overcome the enemy.
10. Cyrus sent for his other army.

## WRITTEN

## A. 1-3.

After<sup>2</sup> a five days' march they reached Issoi, a sea-board city. Here Cyrus's other ships joined him and cast anchor. With these the admiral had been besieging Miletus, since it was hostile to Cyrus. On board were seven hundred mercenaries. Cheirisophus commanded these soldiers. Four hundred hoplites revolted from Abrocomas to Cyrus.

## B. 4-5.

Cyrus was unable to march through the Cilician gates, since the Cilicians guarded the outer wall. Both walls came down to the sea, and a river, called the Carsus, flowed through the pass, which was three stadia wide. So he began to disembark troops to overpower the king's general in case he could not force a passage. But when he<sup>3</sup> (Abrocomas) heard that the ships had arrived, he turned back.

1. τίνες νῆες Κύρῳ παρήσαν;
2. πῇ ῥεῖ ὁ Κάρσος ποταμός;
3. τί οὐκ ἦν παρελθεῖν;

<sup>1</sup> Pass by force.<sup>2</sup> Use a participle.<sup>3</sup> §24.

## EXERCISE XII

*(Anabasis I. 4. 6-11.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Dative of Indirect Object, § 40.
2. Infinitive with *ὥστε*, § 70.
3. *As long as*, § 77.
4. Indirect Quotation of Subordinate Clauses, § 136.

## ORAL

## A. 6-8.

1. A report is going around that they embarked on a merchantman that lay at anchor.
2. We have a trireme for sailing<sup>1</sup> away to Greece.
3. As long as I have their wives and children I shall not pursue them.
4. While I make use of a man I shall not abuse him.
5. Whenever any one runs away he is captured.
6. They will not say that, whenever any one goes away, Cyrus arrests him.

## B. 9-11.

7. While Cyrus is at the sources of the Dardas he destroys a beautiful park.
8. They encamp in the villages which had been given to Parysatis.
9. The generals sent for their men to tell them that the expedition was against the king in Babylon.
10. He does not permit them to wrong the Syrians.

## WRITTEN

## A. 6-8.

While Cyrus was there two generals placed their property on board a merchantman and disappeared. The report went around that they had escaped. Cyrus, however, knew in what direction they had gone. "As long as I make use of a man," said he, "I shall not ill-treat him."

---

<sup>1</sup> Use *ὥστε* with infinitive.

Let them know that they will receive back their wives and children, and yet I have men to guard them (with)."

## B. 9-11.

At the Chalus river they encamped in villages belonging to Parysatis. Here Cyrus ordered the soldiers to burn the beautiful palace of Belesys. Thence he marched to the city of Thapsacus. Here he tells the generals that he will march to Babylon, that they may persuade their men to follow.

1. τί Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων ἀπέπλευσαν;
2. ἐν τίσι κώμαις οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνουν;
3. ποῦ ᾤκειτο Θάψακος;

## EXERCISE XIII

(*Anabasis I. 4. 12-19.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. ἄλλος, § 20.
2. *Until* after an Affirmative, § 79.
3. πρὶν with Infinitive, § 82.
4. Double Questions, § 145 (2).
5. χρόν, § 169.

## ORAL

## A. 12-14.

1. They will conceal these things until they hold an assembly.
2. It is not clear whether Cyrus will give money or not.
3. Before they crossed Cyrus promised to give them money.
4. We must obey Cyrus.
5. Whenever Cyrus gives full pay they follow him.



## B. 15-19.

6. You will not obtain these things until<sup>1</sup> you cross.
7. We must begin the march<sup>2</sup> before the rest obey Cyrus.
8. We shall see to it that the rest of the army follow.
9. Do this in order that Cyrus may praise you.
10. I think they reached the river before Abrocomas burned the boats.

## WRITTEN

## A. 12-14.

It was not clear whether the soldiers would cross or not until Cyrus promised them more pay. On the announcement<sup>3</sup> of these things Cyrus spoke as follows: "I shall give you full pay until we reach Babylon." Before the rest of the generals assembled their men Menon summoned his. Said he, "If you wish to obtain whatsoever Cyrus promises, obey me."

## B. 15-19.

"Whenever any one is faithful to Cyrus he is grateful. Therefore you must begin the march." Cyrus, on perceiving that they had obeyed, was very hopeful,<sup>4</sup> and said to the army: "Soldiers, I shall honor you more than the others as soon as<sup>5</sup> we return to Ionia." Now they crossed the river without<sup>6</sup> boats, for it was fordable at that time.

1. πότερον αὐτοῖς χρήματα ἔδωκε Κῦρος ἢ οὐ;
2. τί Μένων ἐποίει;
3. πῶς διέβαινον τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν;

<sup>1</sup> § 81.<sup>2</sup> § 9.<sup>3</sup> Cf. καλῶντος τοῦ πατρὸς.<sup>4</sup> In great hopes.<sup>5</sup> § 89.<sup>6</sup> I. 3. 11.

## EXERCISE XIV

*(Anabasis I. 5. 1-7.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *ἀνέρις* with Article, § 15.
2. *Except*, § 98.
3. Present General Conditions, § 97.
4. Past General Conditions, § 98.
5. Participle Expressing Means, § 152.

## ORAL

## A. 1-3.

1. If a country is uninhabited it never produces<sup>1</sup> grain.<sup>2</sup>
2. It is not possible to hunt wild asses except on horseback.<sup>3</sup>
3. They often<sup>4</sup> pursued the same animals.
4. If any one approached the wild asses fled.
5. The ostrich runs, but the partridge flies.

## B. 4-7.

6. They were able to procure provisions at all the stopping-places except Pylae.
7. The horses continued to perish of hunger.
8. Cyrus never made forced marches unless food failed the army.
9. They will live by eating meat.
10. If the road is hard for the wagons to get through, the barbarians help to get them out.

## WRITTEN

## A. 1-3.

\*As they marched along the left bank of the river they passed through a level, uninhabited region, in which were all sorts of animals. If any one started an ostrich it would run, making use of its wings. If the soldiers pur-

<sup>1</sup> I. 4. 10.<sup>2</sup> I. 4. 19.<sup>3</sup> I. 2. 7.<sup>4</sup> I. 2. 11.

sued wild asses, they always gave out. It is possible, however, to catch them if horsemen take their stand at intervals.

#### B. 4-7.

The inhabitants of<sup>1</sup> that land made their living by selling millstones in Babylon, where they bought provisions and fodder. And so Cyrus was unable to procure provisions except in Babylon. Therefore, the majority were obliged to eat meat. And fodder, also,<sup>2</sup> began to fail the army, and many of the horses starved. Cyrus often made forced marches to reach water.

1. ποῖα θηρία ἐνῆν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ;
2. πόθεν οἱ ἐνοικούντες ἐλάβανον τὸν σῖτον;
3. πότε σταθμούς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλυνεν;

### EXERCISE XV

(*Anabasis* I. 5. 8-13.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. αὐτός, self, §§ 12-14.
2. Potential Indicative, § 99.
3. Conditional Relative Sentences, § 104.

#### ORAL

#### A. 8-10.

1. You would have thought that they were in a hurry.
2. One would think that the discipline was good.
3. The faster they go<sup>3</sup> the weaker the royal forces will be.
4. Wherever they could not buy provisions they took them.
5. He himself had a strong force.

---

<sup>1</sup> ἐν with dative.

<sup>2</sup> § 180b.

<sup>3</sup> § 106.

## B. 11-13.

6. No one would have thought that Clearchus was angry.
7. Those (men) themselves fled to their own tents for refuge.<sup>1</sup>
8. When they saw the soldiers running to arms a shout arose.
9. He was so terrified that he did not inspect the market.
10. He ordered them to place their shields against their knees.

## WRITTEN

## A. 8-10.

It is clear that the Greeks never halted except where it was necessary to buy provisions. Even an attentive observer would have said that they were running for victory. They hastened as one would hasten who was trying<sup>2</sup> to make war with all speed. The faster they invade<sup>3</sup> the realm of the king the weaker it will be.

## B. 11-13.

Once<sup>4</sup> Clearchus himself saw two soldiers quarreling and he struck the man<sup>5</sup> whom he judged to be in the wrong. Afterwards, as he was riding through Menon's camp to examine a ford, the same man hurled an axe<sup>6</sup> at him. But he missed him. Clearchus was so perplexed that he ordered his own soldiers under arms. Menon's troops, seeing them rushing to arms, were terrified.

1. τί ἔσπευδεν ὁ Κλέαρχος;
2. ποῖα ἐπιτήδεια οἱ στρατιῶται ἀγοράζουσιν;
3. ποῖ κατέφυγε Κλέαρχος;

---

<sup>1</sup> Expressed by *κατά*, prefixed to the verb. <sup>2</sup> Page 103, note 4.  
<sup>3</sup> § 106. <sup>4</sup> I. 5. 7. <sup>5</sup> Dative.

## EXERCISE XVI

(Anabasis I. 5. 14—6. 5.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Causal Relative, § 114.
2. Conditions in Indirect Discourse, § 138.
3. *εἰθε* with Participle, § 157.

## ORAL

## A. 14-17.

1. All happened to be present.
2. As soon as Cyrus learned of the affair he begged the Greeks not to join battle.
3. Cyrus said that if they joined battle these barbarians would be hostile to them.
4. If they do not cease both will be cut to pieces.

## B. 1-5.

5. Orontas, inasmuch as he was related to the king, made war on Cyrus.
6. He wrote a letter (saying) that if he should obtain the horsemen he would plot against Cyrus.
7. Cyrus read the letter as soon as he received it.
8. He said that he would prevent their announcing these things.
9. If I should take these horsemen alive I should come with<sup>1</sup> them.
10. They reported that two thousand horsemen were burning the forage.

## WRITTEN

## A. 14-17.

Before<sup>2</sup> they joined battle Cyrus rode in between<sup>3</sup> them and told them that if they were hostile to each other the barbarians would cut them to pieces. Then he ordered both to their quarters. And so they were reconciled.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Participle.<sup>2</sup> § 82.<sup>3</sup> Follow text.<sup>4</sup> I. 6. 1.

## B. 1-5.

Orontas, who was related to the king, said to Cyrus: "If we should capture those horsemen they would not announce to the king that they have seen us." So Cyrus ordered him to take them alive. Now Orontas wrote a letter to the king, (saying) that if the cavalry would receive him as a friend nothing would prevent his coming. But Cyrus read this letter, and immediately ordered Orontas to be arrested. Among<sup>1</sup> others he summoned Clearchus as a counselor inasmuch as he seemed most faithful.

1. ἄρα μὴ Κλέαρχος καὶ Πρόξενος ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνῆψαν;
2. ποτέρῳ ἐχαλέπαινεν ὁ Κῦρος;
3. ποίῳ ἀνδρὶ ἔδωκεν Ὀρόντας τὴν ἐπιστολήν;

## EXERCISE XVII

(*Anabasis* I. 6. 6-11.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Questions, §§ 25-29.
2. Purpose with *ὅπως* and *ὥς*, § 60.
3. Concessive Clauses, § 116.
4. Double Negatives, § 173.

## ORAL

## A. 6-8.

1. My father did not give him to me to plot against me.
2. Cyrus summoned Clearchus in order to consult with him.
3. "Were you injured by me?" "No," said Orontas.

---

<sup>1</sup> He summoned both others and,

4. Do you not admit that you<sup>1</sup> plundered my territory?
  5. Although he was my servant he revolted.
- B. 8-11.
6. He gave him to his scepter-bearer to be led<sup>2</sup> to death.
  7. Nor did any one ever know that he was put to death.
  8. They advised that he be put to death.
  9. Although they were hostile to him he saluted.
  10. Put him out of the way in order that he may never again injure us.

## WRITTEN

A. 6-8.

Cyrus told them that Orontas, whom his father had<sup>3</sup> given him, had made war on him. Then he asked Orontas if<sup>4</sup> he had ever injured him. "No," said Orontas. "Why then did you ravage my land?" said Cyrus. Orontas replied that the king bade him. "Would you not again exchange<sup>5</sup> pledges if I should be willing?"

B. 8-11.

"Yes," said he, "but you would not trust me even if I should cease plotting against you." Clearchus then advised that he be led to death, that he might never again plot against any one. The others agreed with this opinion. Clearchus said that the very<sup>6</sup> men who had expressed an opinion saluted him. It is clear that Orontas was put out of the way, although no grave was ever seen.

1. τί Κῦρος παρεκάλεσε Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους;
2. πῶς οὖν περὶ Κῦρον ἄδικος ἐγένετο;
3. τίνα γνώμην ἀπέφηνε Κλέαρχος;

---

<sup>1</sup> § 131.    <sup>2</sup> Active voice.    <sup>3</sup> § 54b.    <sup>4</sup> § 145 (1).    <sup>5</sup> Give and take.    <sup>6</sup> Express by a strengthened form of the relative, § 100.

## EXERCISE XVIII

*(Anabasis I. 7. 1-8.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Causal Genitive, § 37.
2. *ὅπως* in an Independent Clause, § 68.
3. *ὅτι* with an Infinitive in a Causal Clause, § 113.

## ORAL

## A. 1-4.

1. Cyrus does not lack allies.
2. "See to it," said he, "that you fight bravely."<sup>1</sup>
3. Owing to the arrival of the king Cyrus held a review.
4. He congratulated the soldiers on their good discipline.<sup>2</sup>
5. In order to encourage them he said that he preferred them to barbarians.

## B. 4-8.

6. I know<sup>3</sup> that they advance with a shout.
7. Owing to his many promises they did not go back home.
8. They say that, even<sup>4</sup> if you should conquer, you would not remember.
9. He told them what they would get<sup>5</sup> if they conquered.
10. They were afraid that he would not remember.

## WRITTEN

## A. 1-4.

Cyrus decided to hold a review on account of the king's advance. On the following morning he considered how he would draw up his men. The Greek generals led their own men. Cyrus exhorted them as follows: "I

---

<sup>1</sup> *θαρραλέως*.    <sup>2</sup> I. 5. 8.    <sup>3</sup> § 132.    <sup>4</sup> *καί*.    <sup>5</sup> *What would be to each.*



know against what sort of men you are going. Although they advance with a shout they are cowards.<sup>1</sup> I congratulate you on your freedom."

B. 4-8.

"If you prove worthy of it I shall make you objects of envy to those at home." "But," said Gaulites, "if you should be successful you would not remember your promises." In order to encourage them Cyrus said: "Do not be afraid that I shall not treat you well."<sup>2</sup> When Cyrus had told what each would receive if they conquered, all were eager.

1. *τίνες ἡγοῦντο τῶν Ἑλλήνων;*
2. *τί συμμαχούς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας ἦγεν;*
3. *τί οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἰσῆσαν παρὰ Κῦρον;*

## EXERCISE XIX

(*Anabasis* I. 7. 9-16.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Dative of Time, § 44.
2. Participle in Indirect Discourse, §§ 132-133.
3. Indirect Questions, §§ 143-145.

ORAL

A. 9-12.

1. Clearchus urged Cyrus to number the Greeks under arms.
2. All who were present<sup>3</sup> asked him if he would get the kingdom<sup>4</sup> without a battle.
3. Abrocomas is said to have been late.
4. But there were three generals besides.<sup>5</sup>
5. The king considered how<sup>6</sup> he would draw up his men.

<sup>1</sup> I. 4. 7.    <sup>2</sup> *εὖ ποιεῖω*; cf. § 32.

<sup>3</sup> § 7.

<sup>4</sup> I. 1. 3.

<sup>5</sup> *Other*.

<sup>6</sup> I. 7. 2.

## B. 13-16.

6. They reported that the king was coming with his soldiers under arms.
7. Between the wall and the river were canals which were four hundred feet wide and twenty feet deep.
8. On the same day the king learned that Cyrus was within the ditch.
9. They asked how many<sup>1</sup> parasangs apart the canals were.
10. He thought that there was no passage between the ditch and the wall.

## WRITTEN

## A. 9-12.

On this occasion Clearchus asked Cyrus if he would gain the kingdom without a battle. Cyrus replied that if Artaxerxes were indeed his brother, he would fight with him.<sup>2</sup> No one exhorted him not to fight. Cyrus learned how the king intended to conduct the battle. The four royal generals were ordered to take up their position in the center<sup>3</sup> of their men. Each commanded three hundred thousand.

## B. 13-16.

Deserters reported that all would be present at the battle except Abrocomas. Therefore Cyrus marched with his troops under arms, and in the fourth day's march came to a trench twenty feet broad and six fathoms deep. Those captured afterwards in the battle said that the king made it as a means of<sup>4</sup> defence. The river and the ditch were twenty-two feet apart.

1. *τίνες παρεκελεύοντο αὐτῷ μὴ μάχεσθαι;*
2. *πόσοι πελτασταὶ ἐγένοντο;*
3. *πότε ἐποίησε τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς;*

<sup>1</sup> § 25.<sup>2</sup> § 18.<sup>3</sup> I. 7. 6.<sup>4</sup> *ἀντὶ*, with the genitive.

## EXERCISE XX

*(Anabasis I. 7. 17—8. 7.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Indirect Reflexive, §§ 18-19.
2. Genitive of Time, § 36.
3. Vivid Future Conditions, § 94.

## ORAL

## A. 17-20.

1. If the king retreats I shall give you ten talents.
2. The king gave up the idea of retreating.
3. Within five days the barbarians will fight.
4. When the seer had sacrificed he asked<sup>1</sup> Cyrus what he would give him if he spoke the truth.

## B. 1-7.

5. When they were arming Cyrus mounted his horse.
6. Cyrus thought that the king would attack him.
7. If the king attacks them in disorder there will be great confusion.
8. They were all armed except<sup>2</sup> Cyrus.
9. There they met the king advancing.
10. They thought that the king would prevent them from taking their places.

## WRITTEN

## A. 17-20.

The seer told Cyrus that the king would retreat for ten days without<sup>3</sup> fighting. "If he does not fight within ten days," said Cyrus, "I will give you ten talents." So he marched with his army in disorder, just as if<sup>4</sup> the king had given up the idea of fighting. Cyrus himself rode in a chariot.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 7. 9.    <sup>2</sup> I. 2. 24.    <sup>3</sup> § 159.    <sup>4</sup> § 154.

## B. 1-7.

When they were about to halt, a horseman shouted out that the king would attack them in disorder unless they fell into line. Accordingly they all began to arm and prepare for battle. Clearchus was stationed on the river with the Greek right. Next to him were fully six thousand horsemen. They all had helmets. But Cyrus fought bare-headed.<sup>1</sup>

1. πῶς Κῦρος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο;
2. πότε εἶπεν ὁ μάντις "οὐ μαχεῖται βασιλεὺς δέκα ἡμερῶν";
3. τί ἐγένετο πολὺς τάραχος;

## EXERCISE XXI

(*Anabasis I. 8. 8-16.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Object Clauses with ὅπως, §§ 67, 69, obs.
2. Consecutive Clauses, §§ 70-73.
3. Virtual Indirect Discourse, § 134.

## ORAL

## A. 8-11.

1. They were so<sup>2</sup> near that the spears were visible.
2. When the ranks were in sight it was already noon.
3. Cyrus exhorted them not to fear the barbarians because they advanced with a shout.
4. If Clearchus leads his men against the center he will conquer the king.
5. He bade them do whatever Cyrus might order.

<sup>1</sup> Having his head bare.

<sup>2</sup> οὕτως.

## B. 12-16.

6. Clearchus was so frightened that he did not withdraw his army.
7. I shall see to it that the king does not surround you.
8. Cyrus stopped to ask who gave out the watchword.
9. When he heard that the king was superior in numbers he was afraid.
10. Xenophon asked if the sacrifices were favorable.

## WRITTEN

## A. 8-11.

In the afternoon the enemy appeared at a great distance. At first nothing was seen but some dust. Then their arms flashed. In front of each square were scythed chariots. They advanced quietly in line. So Cyrus was mistaken when he said they would advance rapidly with a shout.

## B. 12-16.

As he was riding along to survey the two phalanxes he halted and shouted to Clearchus to withdraw his men from the river so as to surround the king. "I shall take care," said he, "that it shall be well." Had<sup>1</sup> he done so he would have conquered. At this juncture the watchword passed along the Greek ranks. Cyrus wondered what it was. Xenophon, whom he met, told him that it was "Zeus and Victory."

1. πῶς οἱ βάρβαροι προσῆσαν;
2. ποῖ Κῦρος ἐβούλετο Κλέαρχον ἄγειν τὸ  
στράτευμα;
3. τί Κῦρος ἤρετο;

---

<sup>1</sup> § 92.

## EXERCISE XXII

*(Anabasis I. 8. 17-25.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *πρὶν* and Infinitive, § 82.
2. Strong Negations, § 173.
3. Use of *οὐδέ*, § 174.

## ORAL

A. 17-20.

1. When the enemy heard them singing the paean they were terror-stricken.
2. They inspired terror whenever they shouted.
3. Before they advanced against the enemy they raised the paean.
4. The barbarians shouted to each other not to give way.
5. No one was caught by the chariots nor was any one shot.

B. 21-25.

6. When the Greeks conquered the opposing forces<sup>1</sup> Cyrus was pleased.
7. He saw the king wheel<sup>2</sup> before he fled.
8. Cyrus thought that he would be safest if he had the cavalry in a solid body.<sup>2</sup>
9. Cyrus feared that the king would attack the Greeks.
10. Not even in the battle did any one shout.

## WRITTEN

A. 17-20.

When the Greeks were about a stadium from the barbarians they raised the war-cry and began to run. Some struck their spears against their shields to frighten the horses. And so the enemy, hearing them shout,

---

<sup>1</sup> Those against (*κατά*) them.

<sup>2</sup> Use a participle.

gave way before the Greeks reached them. Whenever the scythed chariots rushed through their ranks the Greeks opened out. Therefore no one was hurt at all.

B. 21-25.

Cyrus kept his horsemen in a solid body<sup>1</sup> in order that, if it should be necessary, he might give any command he wished.<sup>2</sup> He was afraid that the king would get in the rear of the Greeks. So he attacked the horsemen stationed in front of the king before they could charge. Although he routed these, not even then did he start in pursuit.

1. πότε ἔφυγον οἱ βάρβαροι;
2. διὰ τί οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον εἶχον τὸ αὐτῶν;
3. πόσους ἔχων ἤλαυνε Κῦρος ἀντίος;

### EXERCISE XXIII

(*Anabasis* I. 8. 26—9. 7.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Dative of Instrument, § 42.
2. Potential Optative, § 99.
3. Nominative and Infinitive, § 131.

ORAL

A. 26-29.

1. He says that he saw the king with his own eyes.<sup>3</sup>
2. Some were wounded with arrows, others were slain.
3. He drew his sword.
4. Some one struck him with a sword.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle. <sup>2</sup> Order whatever he might wish. <sup>3</sup> αὐτός.

## B. 1-7.

5. When Cyrus, in his boyhood,<sup>1</sup> was at the court of the king, he learned to obey his elders.
6. There one might see many boys being educated.
7. He knew how to manage horses.
8. If ever<sup>2</sup> he made a treaty with any one he never proved false.
9. He showed that if any came to his assistance he made him happy.
10. He considered it of the highest importance to learn self-control.

## WRITTEN

## A. 26-29.

At that very moment Cyrus shouted that he saw his brother, and charged furiously. Afterward some one killed Cyrus himself. Ctesias says he was present in person, and tells how many lay dead beside Cyrus. For many of those who had been honored by Cyrus fought for him. When Artapates heard that Cyrus was dead he drew his scimitar and committed suicide.

## B. 1-7.

Cyrus was worthy to rule, for he had learned how to obey. He was educated at the court of the king. Here one would hear nothing disgraceful. As a boy Cyrus was well trained in archery. Once, when a bear charged him, some one came to his assistance. And he showed that if any one came to his assistance he knew how to make him an object of envy.

1. πῶς Κῦρος ἀπέθανεν;
2. ποῦ ἐπαιδεύοντο οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες;
3. τίνων στρατιωτῶν ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγός;

---

<sup>1</sup> Being a boy.      <sup>2</sup> § 98.



## EXERCISE XXIV

*(Anabasis I. 9. 8-18.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Until* after an Affirmative, § 79.
2. General Conditions, § 98.
3. Conditional Relative Sentences, § 109.
4.  $\mu\eta$  with Participle, § 158.

## ORAL

A. 8-12.

1. If he made a treaty, men trusted him.
2. He said that those who were not evil-doers would not fare badly.
3. He prayed to live until he benefited all his friends.
4. Some one reported that the Milesians feared him.
5. Cyrus evidently tried to do everybody a good turn.

B. 13-18.

6. One would see many evil-doers whom he had punished.
7. One might<sup>1</sup> do in Cyrus's province whatever he wished.
8. So much did he honor those brave in war that all were willing to serve him.
9. If men incurred danger he made them rich.
10. Everybody did whatever he ordered.

## WRITTEN

A. 8-12.

Those who did nothing contrary to treaty trusted Cyrus. For he said that if they became his friends he would not abandon them. But if any one ever injured him he no longer trusted him, and it is evident that he prayed to live until he had<sup>2</sup> honored all his friends.

---

<sup>1</sup> *It was possible.*      <sup>2</sup> Aorist.

## B. 13-18.

So cruelly did he punish evil-doers that those who did no wrong were safe<sup>1</sup> wherever they might be. If ever he conquered a country he made the bravest general governor of it. So all were willing to incur danger wherever Cyrus was. One would say his soldiers did not serve him on account of the monthly pay. However, he permitted no one to be unrewarded. But he honored especially those who<sup>2</sup> were willing to obey.

1. τίνες πόλεις Κῦρον εἴλοντο;
2. πῶς τοὺς κακούργους ἐτιμωρεῖτο;
3. ποίους ἄνδρας διαφερόντως ἐτίμα;

## EXERCISE XXV

(*Anabasis I. 9. 19-28.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Article with Infinitive, § 9.
2. Verbs with Genitive, § 39.
3. Verbs with Dative, § 46.
4. *Whenever*, § 87.

## ORAL

## A. 19-22.

1. No one concealed<sup>3</sup> his revenues from Cyrus.
2. He did not envy those who<sup>2</sup> acquired money in accordance with justice.
3. He cherished all whom<sup>4</sup> he employed.
4. They knew that Cyrus gave to each whatever he happened to desire.

---

<sup>1</sup> ἀσφαλής.

<sup>2</sup> § 7.

<sup>3</sup> § 33.

<sup>4</sup> § 100.

5. He tries to divide among his friends whatever gifts he does not need.

B. 23-28.

6. His sending bread and wine to his friends was a strange thing.
7. Whenever he was pleased with wine he wished his friends to taste it.
8. Whenever forage is scarce he gives (it) to his friends, that their horses may not be hungry.
9. Owing to his being more powerful, he could surpass his friends in conferring favors.
10. He begged them to drink the wine.

WRITTEN

A. 19-22.

They used their incomes openly, for Cyrus deprived<sup>1</sup> no man of his money. But, if he perceived any one concealing his money, he did not employ him as a co-worker. He gave to each man whatever he desired. And men saw that he distributed amongst his friends whatever he did not need himself. And it happened that he received many presents. And so no one envied him.

B. 23-28.

His zeal to indulge his friends was wonderful. Whenever he happened on some very sweet wine he sent it to a friend and begged him to taste it. If fodder was scarce their horses were never hungry. Whenever he wished to go anywhere he summoned any one he wished to honor.

1. τί φίλων ἐδεῖτο;
2. πῶς Κῦρος ἐδύνατο χιλὸν παρασκευάσασθαι;
3. τίνα δῶρα διεδίδον ὁ Κῦρος τοῖς φίλοις;

---

<sup>1</sup> § 33.

## EXERCISE XXVI

*(Anabasis I. 9. 29—10. 6.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. The Reflexives, §§ 17-19.
2. Double Questions, § 145 (2).
3. Participle Expressing Cause, § 149.

## ORAL

## A. 29-31.

1. Cyrus judged that Orontas was hostile to him.
2. He loved those who were faithful to himself.
3. No one perceived that Ariaeus had fled.
4. They thought that all would fight for Cyrus because they had been honored by him.

## B. 1-6.

5. The king's followers<sup>1</sup> plundered the camp of Cyrus.
6. Many were captured because they were in the camp.
7. The king and Ariaeus were four parasangs apart.
8. The king heard that the Greeks had gone in pursuit.
9. The king considered whether he should collect his own men or pursue the Greeks.
10. While<sup>2</sup> the king was falling upon the camp the Greeks rallied.

## WRITTEN

## A. 29-31.

Cyrus was loved by all, both Greeks and barbarians. No one of those in his service ever<sup>3</sup> attempted to go away, except Orontas. For they thought that they would be loved by him. And when he had fallen those who had won honor with him did not flee.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 8.    <sup>2</sup> Use a participle.    <sup>3</sup> § 173.

## B. 1-6.

After Ariaeus had fled the king went in pursuit of those opposed to him. But he could not plunder the Greek camp because the porters arrayed themselves in opposition. But the Greeks themselves were pursuing their opponents. It is clear that they thought that they were completely victorious. When they perceived that the king was collecting his men, Clearchus and Proxenus considered whether they should prepare to receive him or lead their men to the camp.

1. τοῦ τεταγμένος ἦν Ἀριαῖος;
2. τίνες εἰσέπεσον εἰς τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον;
3. ποῖ ἔφυγον οἱ μετ' Ἀριαίου;

## EXERCISE XXVII

(*Anabasis I. 10. 7-19.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *ᾤσσε* with Infinitive, § 70; cf. § 72.
2. Aorist Infinitive with λέγεται, § 129.
3. Participle in Indirect Discourse, § 132.

## ORAL

## A. 7-12.

1. Tissaphernes got the worst of it.
2. It is said that he wheeled around.
3. The king was afraid that the Greeks would put the river behind them.
4. When they saw the Greeks charging they fled right up the hill.
5. The Greeks pursued so<sup>1</sup> eagerly that the barbarians could not rally.

---

<sup>1</sup> Page 123, note 2.

## B. 13-19.

6. The Greeks withdrew in a body.
7. When the Greeks were halted there the cavalry fled at full speed.
8. He considered whether he should ride up the hill himself or send some one else.<sup>1</sup>
9. Before the Greeks reached camp the wagons were plundered.
10. They resolved to halt.

## WRITTEN

## A. 7-12.

In the first encounter the Greeks opened up their ranks and shot at Tissaphernes, and he is said to have had the worst of it. But when the Greeks saw the king draw up his line in front, they charged so boldly that the barbarians did not await them. The horsemen around the king made a stand on a<sup>2</sup> hill. Some saw the royal standard there.

## B. 13-19.

The Greeks retreated in a body; but the cavalry fled in different directions. Lycius announced what they were doing. So they resolved to halt at the foot of the hill. For they did not know whether Cyrus had gone in pursuit or was dead. Finally they went to the camp in order, if possible, to get something to eat and drink.

1. τοῦ Τισσαφέρνῃς συνέτυχε βασιλεῖ;
2. ὡς εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες βασιλέα ἐγγὺς ὄντα, τί ἐποίησαν;
3. πότε ἀπὸ τοῦ γηλόφου ἔφευγον οἱ ἵπποις;

---

<sup>1</sup> Some one else, ἄλλος.      <sup>2</sup> τῆς.

## EXERCISE XXVIII

*(Anabasis II. 1. 1-8.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Until* after an Affirmative Sentence, § 79.
2. Unreal Conditions, § 92.
3. Impossible Wishes, § 122.
4. Future Participle Expressing Purpose, § 151.

## ORAL

## A. 1-4.

1. Would that Cyrus had conquered!
2. If you had come you would be king now.
3. Ariaeus resolved to wait until the Greeks provided food.
4. Had he not died he would have sent a messenger.
5. A herald came to announce that Ariaeus would set out that day.

## B. 5-8.

6. They resolved to kill the asses.
7. It has been shown what the Greeks did in the march up.
8. When they heard that the enemy had fled they wondered that Cyrus did not come.
9. They used these wagons.
10. At sunrise, deserters from the king came to the camp, as it happened.

## WRITTEN

## A. 1-4.

When the battle had been fought the Greeks intended to wait until Cyrus should come, and when they heard that he was dead they wondered that Ariaeus did not come. Clearchus, who was present by chance, said:

"Men, would that Cyrus had not died! If he were alive he would be ruling. But if Ariaeus is willing, we shall put him on the throne, for the sovereignty belongs to us."

## B. 5-8.

"Therefore we shall send a messenger to announce these things to him." So they resolved to await Ariaeus. But he said that he would go at sunrise to the stopping-place whence he had set out. However, the Greeks remained, for they wished to procure provisions. They were forced to kill their oxen, for they had no meat.

1. ποῖ Ἀριαῖος ἔμελλεν ἰέναι;
2. πόθεν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορίζοντο σῖτον;
3. τί Φαλῖνος ἐντίμως εἶχε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει;

## EXERCISE XXIX

(*Anabasis II. 1. 9-17.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Purpose Clauses, §§ 60, 64.
2. Simple Conditions, § 91.
3. Participle in Indirect Discourse, §§ 132-134.
4. Conditional Participles, § 153.

## ORAL

## A. 9-11.

1. The attendants summoned Clearchus, in order that he might sacrifice.
2. I would sooner die than gratify the king.
3. If we hand over our arms he will slay us.
4. If he conquered let him take our arms.
5. Asking is not the part of the conquerors.



## B. 12-17.

6. If they relied on<sup>1</sup> their valor they were not deprived of their arms.
7. We know that we should be superior to the king.
8. If he wishes to employ us we will make an expedition against his enemies.
9. Phalinus gave them the advice<sup>2</sup> that seemed best to him.
10. It is necessary to do whatever he orders.

## WRITTEN

## A. 9-11.

Heralds came to ask the Greeks for their arms. Thus much answered Cleanor and Proxenus: "We would sooner die than hand over our arms. But if he conquers us we will gratify him. Does he demand them on the ground that he has slain Cyrus, or on the ground that we belong<sup>3</sup> to him? If we did not conquer let him contend with us for our arms."

## B. 12-17.

The king wished to deprive them of everything. But they thought that if they made use of their arms themselves, they could fight for their lives.<sup>4</sup> "Let us take counsel with Phalinus," said Clearchus. "But I was not sent to counsel you," he replied. They knew that they were in between impassable rivers. Nevertheless they were not persuaded.

1. τί οὐκ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλέαρχος;
2. πότερον ὡς κρατῶν ἤτησε βασιλεὺς τὰ ὅπλα ἢ ὡς διὰ φιλίαν;
3. ἄρα μή τις βασιλεῖ ἔτι τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀντεποίειτο;

---

<sup>1</sup> Used. <sup>2</sup> Advised what seemed. <sup>3</sup> Genitive absolute. <sup>4</sup> Bodies.

## EXERCISE XXX

*(Anabasis II. 1. 18—2. 4.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Question of Appeal, § 29.
2. *Otherwise*, § 93.
3. Uses of *δέ* and *χαί*, § 169.
4. Negative with Infinitive, § 175.

## ORAL

## A. 18-23.

1. I think that we should be better friends to the king if we did not give up our arms.
2. Phalinus advised them not to make war on the king.
3. There are many hopes of safety if we wish to fight.
4. What am I to order?
5. He asked Clearchus whether there would be peace or war.

## B. 1-4.

6. Come during the night; otherwise we shall go away early.
7. Am I not to do whatever is advantageous?
8. It is not possible to go to Ariaeus without provisions.
9. Whenever I summon you, you must pack up.
10. Phalinus asked what he would announce.

## WRITTEN

## A. 18-23.

The ambassador advised them not to go away against the will of the king. And Clearchus said that, if it should be necessary, they would fight. But he did not say whether they would go away or remain. "What are we to say to the king?" said Phalinus. "Announce to

him," said Clearchus, "that if we go away there will be no war."

B. 1-4.

When they had gone some said that Ariaeus would be king. But Cheirisophus said that Ariaeus wished to depart early. "If we wish to accompany him let us do whatever he orders. Between us and Ariaeus there is no river to be crossed." So at sunset they took supper, and at the third signal of the trumpet,<sup>1</sup> they loaded the pack animals and followed the guide.

1. τί Κλέαρχος ἐβούλετο τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως  
πρεσβεύοντα συμβουλευσαι μὴ παραδοῦναι  
τὰ ὅπλα;
2. πότερον πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἴησαν φίλοι ἔχοντες  
τὰ ὅπλα ἢ παραδόντες ἄλλῳ;
3. τί ἐδόκει τοῖς Ἑλλήσι ποιεῖν;

### EXERCISE XXXI

(*Anabasis II. 2. 5-13.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Potential Optative, § 99.
2. Verbals, §§ 164-165.
3. Strong Negative, § 172.

ORAL

A. 5-9.

1. We must elect a general.
2. The infantry deserted to the king.

---

<sup>1</sup> When (the trumpet) had given the third signal.

3. For the future we shall not<sup>1</sup> betray each other.
4. They swore to follow Ariaeus.
5. The captains were leading the cavalry.

## B. 10-13.

6. Ariaeus gave his opinion about the journey.
7. We should lack provisions.
8. We must go by the longer route.
9. The king will never<sup>1</sup> overtake us.
10. Thus<sup>2</sup> they escaped, running away.

## WRITTEN

## A. 5-9.

The captains obeyed<sup>3</sup> Clearchus, for<sup>4</sup> he was not inexperienced. The cavalry which Miltocythes led, are said to have deserted to the barbarians; but the rest stacked their arms about midnight. Then the Greeks and the barbarians assembled and swore not to desert. In this way<sup>2</sup> they became allies. The Greeks did all that allies ought to do, but Ariaeus betrayed them.

## B. 10-13.

They asked Ariaeus whether he intended to go back the same road or some other. "I have considered these things," said he. "We ought not to go the road we came. For we should not be able to get provisions. Let us, therefore, go the longer road." He calculated that the king would not dare to follow. When the day dawned they were two days' journey from the king.

1. τίνα εἶλοντο οἱ στρατιῶται ἄρχοντα;
2. τί ὤμοσαν οἱ βάρβαροι;
3. ἡ βασιλεὺς δυνήσεται αὐτοὺς καταλαβεῖν;

<sup>1</sup> Emphatic.<sup>2</sup> I. 8. 22.<sup>3</sup> § 46.<sup>4</sup> § 149.

## EXERCISE XXXII

*(Anabasis II. 2. 14—3. 3.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Until*, § 79.
2. Conditional Relative Sentences, §§ 104, 106.
3. Causal Clauses, §§ 112, 149.

## ORAL

## A. 14-18.

1. At sunset the scouts saw smoke in the nearest village.
2. The king was so near that they saw his baggage animals pasturing.
3. Whoever were not in the ranks armed themselves.
4. The enemy were terrified because the Greeks bivouacked near by.
5. They were weary because they were hungry.

## B. 19-3.

6. It was natural that fear should fall on the Greeks.
7. Whoever comes from the king will review the army.
8. When the messengers were present none of the unarmed were visible.
9. The herald proclaimed that Clearchus would not be at leisure until he drew up the troops.
10. Clearchus knew that the messengers were waiting.

## WRITTEN

## A. 14-18.

The king was encamped at no great distance, so that the scouts saw much smoke. But Clearchus ordered his men to encamp in the villages, because they were wearied. Here they took whatever the enemy had not plundered. The next day they saw that the enemy had fled. Those

who happened to come up last kept calling to each other, so that the barbarians were frightened.

## B. 19-3.

During the night fear fell on the soldiers, and a great tumult arose. But the herald proclaimed that the generals were safe. At daybreak the guards announced that messengers had come to seek the generals. But Clearchus bade them wait until he arranged the army so that the best should be visible. And it was natural to do this.

1. *τίνες ἔθρον εἰς τὰς τάξεις;*
2. *πῶς δῆλον ἦν ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη;*
3. *πόσον χρόνον περιέμενον οἱ κήρυκες;*

## EXERCISE XXXIII

(*Anabasis II. 3. 4-13.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *ἄν* with Indicative, § 57.
2. Relative Clause of Purpose, § 62.
3. Past General Conditions, § 98.
4. *Without*, § 159.

## ORAL

## A. 4-9.

1. Men have come to announce the truce to the Greeks.
2. The messengers dared to ride away without giving an answer.
3. We shall not make a truce without receiving provisions.
4. Furnish provisions until some one comes with<sup>1</sup> guides.

---

<sup>1</sup> Participle.

5. The Greeks themselves feared that Clearchus would not make a truce with the king.

B. 10-13.

6. He found the ditches full of mud.
7. If they were unable to cross they used to make a bridge.
8. Those who brought up the rear did not cut down palms.
9. They did not suspect that Clearchus would strike the soldiers.
10. They were ashamed not to leap into the ditches.

WRITTEN

A. 4-9.

Messengers who were capable of discussing the truce came and said: "There will be a truce until we furnish provisions." On hearing this, Clearchus asked whether they would receive guides. They replied that the king would send guides. Without wasting time the Greeks took counsel. "I shall not answer," said Clearchus, "without asking where the king is."

B. 10-13.

Clearchus, with a staff in his right hand, brought up the rear. Already many dangers were confronting them. If ever they came to a ditch full of water they would make a bridge. Clearchus selected the suitable ones to cut down the palm trees. He himself used to leap into the water. Therefore the soldiers were ashamed not to hurry, for they were unable to march without working hard.

1. τί ἐφ' ἀμάξης ἐπορεύετο ὁ Ἀριαῖος;
2. πότε τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ὁ φόβος ἐνέπεσεν;
3. πῶς τὰς τάφρους διέβαινον;

## EXERCISE XXXIV

*(Anabasis II. 3. 14-23.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Use of *πρῶτος*, § 16.
2. Accusative of Specification, § 81.
3. Conditional Relative Sentences, § 109.
4. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse, §§ 136-137.

## ORAL

## A. 14-18.

1. The palm wine differs from that of Greece.
2. The dates are wonderful in shape.
3. The soldiers who ate the dates were (always) astonished.
4. Those who met Tissaphernes (always) spoke through an interpreter.
5. He said he would save the Greeks who had fallen into many difficulties.

## B. 19-23.

6. They were the first to announce the death of Cyrus.
7. They promised to join the king.
8. If any one betrays us we shall put him to death.
9. He is ashamed to ravage the land.
10. He said that they made the expedition because Cyrus was in danger.

## WRITTEN

## A. 14-18.

The guides showed them where they might get provisions. And they ate the choice dates, which, among the barbarians, are stored up for the masters. They differed from the others in size. Here they met Tissaphernes. "You have fallen into insuperable difficulties," said he, "but if you follow me, I shall get you to Greece in safety."



## B. 19-23.

He said that when Cyrus was marching against the king he was the first to join him with assistance. He advised them to be faithful to the king. After considering this proposal Clearchus replied: "Cyrus made this expedition to contest the sovereignty with the king. We marched up to do Cyrus a good turn. But if any one tries to interfere with us we shall make war on him."

1. πόθεν ἔλαβον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια;
2. τίνες ἦκον παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως;
3. τί ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλείᾳ;

## EXERCISE XXXV

(*Anabasis II. 3. 24—4. 4.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Whenever*, § 86.
2. *Although*, § 116.
3. Sequence of Tense after Participle, § 127.
4. *May*, § 170.

## ORAL

## A. 24-29.

1. The king will not furnish a market until you give pledges.
2. They swore not to take provisions.
3. Although the truce continued the king did not let them go.
4. Whenever the country is friendly you may buy provisions.
5. You must give pledges.

## B. 1-4.

6. Owing to the king's paying attention to Ariaeus the Greeks did not wish to remain.
7. He would attack us if we should remain.
8. Clearchus, although he was afraid, encouraged the Greeks.
9. They came, saying that the army was scattered.
10. Although Ariaeus was encamped near the Greeks, the king wished to attack them.

## WRITTEN

## A. 24-29.

"Wait until I announce these things to the Greeks. If you give pledges to buy food and drink whenever we furnish a market, he will let you go, although you made an expedition against him. If you swear not to take provisions you may march to Greece through a friendly country. The king always<sup>1</sup> gives whatever I ask." Finally, the king permitted Ariaeus to save the Greeks.

## B. 1-4.

While the Greeks were encamped<sup>2</sup> near Ariaeus the king paid no attention to the barbarians. Messengers came, saying that the king would cherish no resentment for the past. He wished to attack the Greeks, in order that they might not announce that they had conquered the Great King. But his army was scattered.

1. τί οἱ ἄλλοι ἀντέλεγον Τισσαφέρνει;
2. ποῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες;
3. πότε βασιλεὺς ἐπιθήσεται;

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 9. 19.    <sup>2</sup> Genitive absolute.

## EXERCISE XXXVI

*(Anabasis II. 4. 5-14.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Uses of *αὐτός*, § 12-15.
2. Temporal Participles, §§ 156-157.
3. Use of *δεῖ*, § 169.

## ORAL

## A. 5-8.

1. Clearchus thought of this himself.
2. You do not know whether you will have allies.
3. They were anxious to cross the river.
4. If we should be conquered the cavalry would destroy us.
5. We ought not to act contrary to treaty.

## B. 8-14.

6. At the same time that the others were collecting wood the Greeks were foraging.
7. The Greeks had their own guides.
8. They did not tent in the same (place).
9. The wall was fifty feet high.
10. The canal was a hundred feet wide.

## WRITTEN

## A. 5-8.

"If we act contrary to the treaty no one will be friendly to us. It is impossible to go away. Many rivers are to be crossed, and I know that the enemy will oppose us. We ought to have cavalry. For if we are defeated we shall not be saved." At the same time that Clearchus was saying this the king was perjuring himself.

## B. 8-14.

The Greeks encamped by themselves, and those who went out for wood kept an eye on the enemy. Tissaphernes was a parasang distant. There were many canals which they had to cross by means of bridges. At length they came to a populous town. Here there were all kinds of beautiful trees. Tissaphernes and his force were not in sight.

1. ἀδύνατόν ἐστι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην;
2. τί νικῶντες οὐδέν' ἂν ἀποκτείναιεν;
3. τίς ἦν Ὀρόντας;

## EXERCISE XXXVII

(*Anabasis II. 4. 15-24.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Verbs of Fearing, § 65.
2. Idiomatic Indirect Questions, § 144.
3. Participle with τυγχάνω, § 161.

## ORAL

## A. 15-18.

1. A man happened to be looking for Clearchus.
2. The outposts asked where Clearchus was.
3. They are on their guard lest we attack them.
4. If he intends to attack us we shall not cross.

## B. 19-24.

5. If we are conquered no one will come to our assistance.
6. They were afraid that the Greeks would destroy the bridges.
7. If we should remain here we should be able to injure the king.
8. They announced that no one was attacking.
9. While they were guarding the bridge, no one appeared.

10. They asked the number of the villages on the island.

## WRITTEN

A. 15-18.

A man came up, looking for a general. "I am a general," said Proxenus. Hearing this, he said: "Those who are friendly to you sent me to bid you be on your guard lest Tissaphernes destroy the bridge during the night. If you cross he intends to attack you." The Greeks were alarmed lest they should be left between the canal and the river.

B. 19-24.

But a certain young man said: "Why need we send a guard? They will not destroy the bridge. For if they are defeated no one will escape if the bridge is destroyed. But no one will attack us, for they are afraid that we shall remain here. We should have the river and canal as defences." The messenger did not watch to see if they sent a guard.

1. πού ἦσαν Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν;
2. πόση τις ἦν ἡ χώρα ἣ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος;
3. τί διέβαινον γέφυραν πεφυλαγμένως;

## EXERCISE XXXVIII

(Anabasis II. 4. 25—5. 6.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Accusative of Specification, § 31.
2. Infinitive of Purpose, § 63.
3. πρὶν with Infinitive, § 82.

## ORAL

A. 25-28.

1. Whatever villages belonged<sup>1</sup> to Cyrus they plundered.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 41.

2. The city was called Opis.
3. Clearchus halted the whole army.
4. They met a numerous army.
5. Artaxerxes intrusted this army to his brother to lead from Susa.

## B. 1-6.

6. He resolved to be on his guard if the barbarians distrusted the Greeks.
7. He interviewed Tissaphernes before they wronged each other.
8. I have come to stop these suspicions if I can.
9. We do not intend to injure you.
10. We distrusted you before pledges were given.

## WRITTEN

## A. 25-28.

They met the brother of Artaxerxes leading a large army from the city of<sup>1</sup> Susa, and he halted his troops to watch the Greeks, who were marching by two abreast. At the sight of<sup>2</sup> the army the barbarians were frightened. Thence they marched along the bank of the river and plundered many large and prosperous villages, which were situated on the other side of the river.

## B. 1-6.

Clearchus desired to remove these suspicions. So he had a conference with Tissaphernes before any plot was apparent. "We know," said he, "that you are watching us like foes. And we in turn have resolved that if you attempt to injure us we shall be on our guard, in order that we may not suffer harm. But we have given pledges not to distrust each other. Therefore, let us remove this distrust."

---

<sup>1</sup> §2, obs.    <sup>2</sup> Use a participle.

1. ποῦ ᾠκοῦντο Ὀπίς καὶ Καιναί;
2. τί ἐπέτρεψε Τισσαφέρνης τὰς κώμας διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν;
3. τί Κλέαρχος ἐβούλετο τῷ Τισσαφέρνει συγγενέσθαι;

## EXERCISE XXXIX

(Anabasis II. 5. 7-15.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Genitive of Comparison, § 35.
2. Characterizing Relative, § 75.

## ORAL

A. 7-10.

1. I am not conscious of having disregarded my oaths.
2. The gods rule men.
3. We shall not contend with our benefactor.
4. He will tell the character<sup>1</sup> of his hopes.
5. Your presence<sup>2</sup> would be the greatest blessing.

B. 11-15.

6. Who has such<sup>3</sup> power as to trouble you?
7. You would be greater than the Egyptians.
8. Because they had been punished they distrusted him.
9. Clearchus persuaded Tissaphernes that they would serve him.
10. No one is a cleverer<sup>4</sup> speaker<sup>5</sup> than Clearchus.

## WRITTEN

A. 7-10.

I do not esteem those happy who disregard their oaths. There is no stronghold to which they would be able to fly for refuge. For the gods rule all things.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 144. <sup>2</sup> Cf. τὸ σέ—ἀπιστεῖν. <sup>3</sup> § 100. <sup>4</sup> δεινός. <sup>5</sup> To speak.

Many things prevent us from being hostile to you. You are our benefactor. The journey is full of difficulty. And without you the rivers would be hard to cross, and there would be a scarcity of provisions.

## B. 11-15.

You are our ally and have the province of Cyrus. We do not desire to deprive you of this. By making use of us you can punish the Egyptians and render the troublesome Mysians submissive. So none of your neighbors will be so mad as to annoy you. We are grateful to you because you are our friend, and we would not plot against you.

1. πῶς Τισσαφέρνης μέγιστον ἦν τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἀγαθόν;
2. τί Κῦρον ἐπεθύμησε Κλέαρχος φίλον οἱ γενέσθαι;
3. πῶς Τισσαφέρνης κολάσει τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους;

## EXERCISE XL

(*Anabasis II. 5. 16-26.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Adjectives with Dative, § 45.
2. Idiomatic Use of Participle, § 163.
3. Verbals, §§ 164-165.

## ORAL

## A. 16-20.

1. He was glad to hear those words from Clearchus.
2. If they had lacked cavalry they would not have attacked us.
3. We must cross the mountains.
4. You must not choose dangerous means.
5. We shall enlist fire against you.



## B. 21-26.

6. We are not so foolish as to be impious in the sight of the gods.
7. Cyrus's mercenary troops are faithful to me.
8. Tissaphernes did not indicate the source of his information about Clearchus.
9. Those who are plotting against you will suffer the extreme penalty.
10. It is characteristic of barbarians to do disgraceful things.<sup>1</sup>

## WRITTEN

## A. 16-20.

"I am glad to know that you are not ill-disposed to me. If we had attacked you we should have destroyed you. For we lack neither<sup>2</sup> horses nor men. You must traverse great plains and cross many rivers. It is possible for us to burn up the grain in the plains and seize the rivers in advance. None of these means is dangerous to us. For you would not be able to injure us."

## B. 21-26.

"It is characteristic of foolish men to do impious deeds. But I am not bound by necessity. I can easily destroy you. But it is possible for you to be useful to me. If you are true to me I shall be able to wear my tiara upright. But certain ones are traducing you." Thus spoke Tissaphernes.

1. πῶς βασιλεῖ ἔξεστι τὰ ὄρη ἄπορα τοῖς Ἑλλήσι παρέχειν;
2. πῶς εἶχεν ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάναν βασιλεύς;
3. τί ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνης περὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων;

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the adjective in the neuter plural.    <sup>2</sup> § 173.

## EXERCISE XLI

*(Anabasis II. 5. 27-37.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. The Article, §§ 1, 7, 8, 10.
2. *Until* after a Negative, § 80.
3. Virtual Indirect Discourse, § 139.

## ORAL

## A. 27-30.

1. He remained until those who were evilly disposed to the king were punished.
2. Menon was evidently plotting against Cyrus.
3. They wished to punish whoever traduced<sup>1</sup> them.
4. He knows that no one trusts a traitor.
5. The soldiers were on good terms with Clearchus.

## B. 31-37.

6. Tissaphernes invited them within.
7. He bade them, if they fell in with any one, general or soldier, to slay him.
8. The Greeks were not afraid until they saw Nicarchus wounded.
9. Many were foraging.
10. Those near by recognized Ariaeus.

## WRITTEN

## A. 27-30.

Clearchus spoke as follows: "We are on good terms with Tissaphernes. But it is clear that some one is traducing us. Now the generals must meet Tissaphernes, for he will punish whoever is plotting against us." The soldiers did not have confidence in Tissaphernes. But Clearchus insisted until the generals and about twenty of the captains went with him.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the present tense.

## B. 31-37.

On their arrival at the camp the barbarians seized those within and slew those without. And those in<sup>1</sup> the camp did not know what had happened until a wounded soldier came. Shortly afterwards the brother of Tissaphernes came and gave orders that if any one wished to learn the news from the king he was to come forth. So the generals who happened to be in the camp went out at once.

1. τίνα ὑπόπτευε Κλέαρχος εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα;
2. πόσοι ᾔεσαν παρὰ Τισσαφέρην;
3. ποῦ ἦν Χειρίσοφος;

## EXERCISE XLII

(*Anabasis* II. 5. 38—6. 5.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *While, as long as*, § 76.
2. *Participle with φαίνομαι*, § 135.
3. *Without*, § 159.

## ORAL

## A. 38-42.

1. Clearchus had his deserts because he broke the treaty.
2. They clearly betrayed the Greeks.
3. They swore not<sup>2</sup> to plot against the Greeks.
4. If you put the generals to death you perjured yourselves.
5. They went away without demanding the arms of the Greeks.

---

<sup>1</sup>From; cf. I. 2. 3.    <sup>2</sup>μή; cf. § 130.

## B. 1-5.

6. He appeared to be acquainted with the generals.
7. As long as he received money he continued to collect troops.
8. He fought until he conquered the Thracians in battle.
9. While there was peace he remained in the Chersonese.
10. It has already been told (written) how the war arose between Cyrus and the Thracians.

## WRITTEN

## A. 38-42.

It was clear that Clearchus was in high honor, but Menon reported that he had broken the truce. So Tissaphernes betrayed him and those with him without shame before gods or men. For he had sworn to be friendly to the Greeks. But when they asked him for their generals he did not send them.

## B. 1-5.

But he took them up to the king, who beheaded them. Xenophon, who was well acquainted with Clearchus, says he loved war. While he was in Perinthus the ephors tried to put him to death for disobedience. But he sailed away to Cyrus, and persuaded him to give him ten thousand darics. Taking this money, he collected an army and continued to harry the Thracians until war arose between Cyrus and his brother.

1. τί ἦν Μένων ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ;
2. πῶς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐτελεύτησαν;
3. πόσον χρόνον ἐπολέμει Κλέαρχος τοῖς Θραξίν;

## EXERCISE XLIII

*(Anabasis II. 6. 6-15.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Genitive of Time, § 36.
2. *Whenever*, §§ 86-87.
3. Potential Indicative, § 99.

## ORAL

A. 6-10.

1. He preferred to be in danger.
2. Generals must be obeyed.
3. He thought that a general was of no use<sup>1</sup> unless he punished his soldiers.
4. His soldiers kept guard night and day.
5. His voice was harsh.

B. 11-15.

6. Whenever he punished the soldiers they deserted him.
7. Whenever they are in danger they obey him.
8. He would have had a well disciplined army.
9. Xenophon says that he died at the age of fifty.
10. Punishment is useful unless it is cruel.

## WRITTEN

A. 6-10.

Clarchus was wise and fit to rule. All agree that he was fond of war. For, while it was possible to spend his money on pleasure, he preferred danger. Night and day he planned how to provide food for his soldiers. But he thought that a soldier ought to be punished, not persuaded. So his army always advanced readily against the enemy.

B. 11-15.

In battle his soldiers preferred to hear his voice, and they would not have followed another. Owing to his

---

<sup>1</sup> No use of a general.

cruelty they obeyed him. But all desired to leave him unless they were bound by necessity. Whenever he began to conquer he was able to get soldiers. They feared his harsh punishment, but they knew that his presence<sup>1</sup> was a source of safety.

1. τίνα τρόπον εἶχε Κλέαρχος;
2. τί ἐκόλαζε τοὺς στρατιώτας;
3. πότε οἱ στρατιῶται Κλέαρχον εἶλοντο;

## EXERCISE XLIV

(*Anabasis* II. 6. 16-30.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Verbs with the Genitive Case, § 39.
2. Subject of Infinitive Omitted, § 131.

## ORAL

## A. 16-23.

1. He thought he was capable of being friendly with the best.
2. Whatever he desired he wished to obtain by injustice.
3. He distrusted his friends and feared his enemies.
4. Plotting is the shortest road.
5. He honors the powerful in order that he may obtain whatever he desires.

## B. 24-30.

6. He courted perjurers.
7. He tried to gain wealth by traducing the honorable.
8. He laughed whenever he saw any one practicing justice.
9. Beheading is the quickest death.
10. He perceived that the unjust were punished.

---

<sup>1</sup> Page 150, note 2.

## WRITTEN

A. 16-23.

Proxenus wished to associate with Gorgias, in order that he might be capable of great deeds. It is clear that he did not obtain wealth and power. He thought that he could rule soldiers by praising the good. But he incurred the hatred of many, owing to<sup>1</sup> his not inspiring them with fear. However, many had respect for him.

B. 24-29.

Menon practiced deceit in order to be friendly with the powerful. He laughed at the truthful, and feared those who practiced injustice, because they were always on their guard. His soldiers obeyed him, owing to his willingness to commit injustice. After the other generals were punished Menon was tortured for a year.

1. τίνος ἐπιθυμῶν ἦλθε Πρόξενος πρὸς Κῦρον;
2. τί ἀπήχθετο;
3. τίνος τελευτῆς ἔτυχε Μένων;

## EXERCISE XLV

(Anabasis III. 1. 1-9.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Some* with Indicative, § 71.
2. *Whenever*, §§ 86-87.
3. Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 138.

## ORAL

A. 1-3.

1. I have shown how Tissaphernes seized the generals.
2. It is clear that we are many stadia distant from Greece.
3. Even if they had guides no one would furnish a market.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 113.

4. We shall not kindle fires.
5. You are so far from Greece that you will never see your wives and children.

## B. 4-9.

6. Is<sup>1</sup> it better to sacrifice to Apollo or to some other of the gods?
7. Xenophon intended to find out to which of the gods he ought to pray.
8. Whenever he intends to sail away he asks Apollo about the journey.
9. They blame him because he did not overtake Cyrus.
10. Socrates promised to advise him if he would read the letter.

## WRITTEN

## A. 1-3.

Clearly the Greeks were in great perplexity. They reflected that they were surrounded<sup>2</sup> by impassable rivers. They had no guide nor had they allies. And if they should not conquer the hostile tribes no one would furnish a market. They were so discouraged that no one tasted food that night, and whenever they were discouraged few of them slept. For they thought that they would never reach home.

## B. 4-9.

Xenophon was not a soldier, but he followed his friend Proxenus. When Proxenus sent for him he read the letter to Socrates, who advised him to ask Apollo whether he would be saved or killed. Xenophon said that if the gods commanded him to go he would set out on the journey. He thought it better to go, for Proxenus promised that he would be successful if he joined Cyrus's expedition.

---

<sup>1</sup>§27.    <sup>2</sup> *In the midst of.*



## EXERCISE XLVI

*(Anabasis III. 1. 10-20.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Object Clauses with *ὅτι*, § 67.
2. *While, as long as*, § 76.
3. *As if*, § 154.

## ORAL

A. 10-14.

1. The men were deceived by Cyrus.
2. While he slept he saw a light from heaven.
3. They were afraid that they would fall into the power of the king.
4. I took care that I did not surrender to the enemy.
5. They were distressed as if they were already hemmed in by difficulties.

B. 15-20.

6. He will not cease making preparations to inspire us with fear, as if it were possible to inspire Greeks with fear.
7. I esteem the king happy, seeing the size and character of his country.
8. They were unable to procure cattle until the king declared war.
9. Whenever any one surrendered the king put him to death.
10. As long as they had gold they bought provisions.

## WRITTEN

A. 10-14.

Xenophon, who had fallen asleep, saw a vision. A thunderbolt fell into the tent. Waking up, he said: "What is to prevent the enemy from coming in the morning? Here we are lying, as if the night were not passing. It is likely that we shall fall into the hands of the king, if

we do not defend ourselves. Who is arranging that we shall not suffer most terrible things?"

B. 15-20.

"So I did not summon you until I knew that the king had declared war. He has made preparations to make us slaves instead of soldiers. If we should surrender he would torture us cruelly in order that none might ever make an expedition against him. As long as we were bound by oaths we could procure neither food nor clothing. For few had anything with which to buy."

## EXERCISE XLVII

(*Anabasis III. 1. 21-32.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *When*, §§ 84-85.
2. *Exhortations*, § 119.
3. *Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse*, § 136.
4. *Participle Expressing Means*, § 152.

ORAL

A. 21-26.

1. They refrained from plundering<sup>1</sup> on account of their oaths.
2. The captains incited the others to noble deeds.
3. Let us ward off the evils from ourselves.
4. He said that whoever mentioned the difficulties was not fit to lead.
5. We shall not obtain the prizes otherwise than by showing ourselves brave.

B. 27-32.

6. They encamped beside the king until he furnished provisions.
7. The wretched men were beaten and maltreated.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 2. 25.

8. He bade them pile baggage on him.<sup>1</sup>
9. Since he bids us disgrace our country, expel him.
10. When he was talking nonsense Xenophon interrupted.

**WRITTEN**

A. 21-26.

"We are braver than they. We are capable of bearing hardships and the gods will give us victory. And so let us not wait for men to lead<sup>2</sup> us, but let us set out. I will lead if you will follow. We can not obtain safety<sup>3</sup> otherwise than by humbling the arrogance of the enemy." Thus he spoke, inciting them to noble deeds.

B. 27-32.

"When the king was exulting over the victory he demanded our arms. But when we did not give them up he asked for a truce. And we trusted him until he broke the truce. If we should go to him again he would deprive us of our arms. Apollonides does not remember these things. He is not fit to be a captain. Such men are a disgrace to Greece."

**EXERCISE XLVIII***(Anabasis III. 1. 32-41.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Shall have*, § 89.
2. Future Conditions, § 94.
3. Commands, § 117.

**ORAL**

A. 32-36.

1. They resolved to summon the captain in case the general was dead.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.<sup>2</sup> § 62.<sup>3</sup> ἀσφάλεια.

2. If you appear cowardly they will not follow you.
3. Do you, Hieronymus, summon the soldiers.
4. When you shall have made preparations against the enemy the men will follow your example.
5. If you are cowards you will fall into the hands of the barbarians.

## B. 37-41.

6. It is right that the officers should surpass the soldiers in honor.
7. When we shall have collected the soldiers, encourage them.
8. If they are cheerful they will do whatever is necessary.
9. The generals ought to take counsel for the soldiers day and night.
10. They know that disorder ruins an army.

## WRITTEN

## A. 32-36.

About midnight all the generals who were safe assembled. Hieronymus bade Xenophon begin. "You all see our present plight. Let us consider what ought to be done. Wherever we are the enemy will plot against us. But cheer up. Being as numerous as we are, we can destroy them. But if you are down-hearted the soldiers will follow your example."

## B. 37-41.

"You are different from the rank and file. And it is right that you should surpass them in honor. But they will expect you to take counsel for them if there is war. Now you would do a great service if you should appoint generals. For there must be good discipline whether there is peace or war. Without discipline you could not employ the soldiers for any purpose."

## EXERCISE XLIX

*(Anabasis III. 1. 42—2. 3.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Possible Wishes, § 120.
2. Temporal Participle, §§ 156-157.

## ORAL

## A. 42-47.

1. The enemy will not await those who are brave.
2. Those who strive to live do not, as a rule, reach old age.
3. Let us be stout-hearted ourselves, inasmuch as we are generals.
4. They praised Xenophon for what he said.
5. Do not delay to elect generals.

## B. 1-3.

6. They accomplished what was necessary.
7. When the generals had been brought into the midst they stationed pickets.
8. May we be saved.
9. May you not suffer such things as Menon suffered.
10. We shall conquer if we do not submit.

## WRITTEN

## A. 42-47.

“Numbers do not give victory. Those who strive in every way to die nobly always await the enemy. But those who are not stout-hearted do not, as a rule, reach old age. Since we are in this plight let us encourage the others. We ought all to be such as our former generals were.” Without delay they chose generals.

## B. 1-3.

As soon as they summoned<sup>1</sup> the soldiers they led the generals into the midst. Cheirisophus was the first<sup>2</sup> to

---

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle.      <sup>2</sup> § 16.

speaking. "Men, our generals have been betrayed and we have been deprived of our former allies. But do not submit, in order that, if we are not saved, we may not die disgracefully. May we never become subject to the barbarians while we have arms."

## EXERCISE L

(Anabasis III. 2. 4-12.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Direct Reflexives, § 17.
2. Two Accusatives, § 33.
3. Use of *δεῖ*, § 169.

## ORAL

A. 4-8.

1. The gods punish whoever does not respect them.
2. May they not injure the friends of Cyrus.
3. If he intrusts himself to them they will deceive him again.
4. They intend to obtain safety by victory.<sup>1</sup>
5. We ought not to be despondent.

B. 9-12.

6. All must keep their oaths.
7. He reminded them of the treachery of the Persians.
8. They came to destroy Athens.
9. It is natural for them to be brave.
10. Whenever they approve of anything<sup>2</sup> they hold up their hands.

## WRITTEN

A. 4-8.

"These barbarians respect neither gods nor men. Tissaphernes gave pledges to save us, but he considered

---

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle.

<sup>2</sup> Whenever anything seems good.

it of the greatest importance to deceive and destroy us. And Ariaeus, also, whom we should<sup>1</sup> have made king, has deserted us. But the gods will requite them. Let us, equipped for war, punish them for what we have suffered at their hands.<sup>2</sup> And may the gods give us victory."

B. 9-12.

"The gods are allies of those who keep their oaths, and hostile to those who break truces. Therefore it is likely that they will be our allies. At any rate, let us vow to sacrifice to them as many goats as the number of the enemy that we slay. I need not remind you of the multitudinous host of the barbarians. You all know that if we withstand them we shall be saved."

## EXERCISE LI

(*Anabasis* III. 2. 13-21.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Since*, § 90.
2. *Relative Attraction*, § 102.

### ORAL

A. 13-17.

1. Then the contest was for freedom; now it is for safety.
2. Freedom is a great trophy.
3. They were defeated both by land and sea.
4. They did not disgrace those who defeated Xerxes.
5. Since they are more cowardly than we, be bold.

B. 18-21.

6. It is safer to fight on the ground.
7. They can flee wherever they wish.

---

<sup>1</sup> Potential Indicative.    <sup>2</sup> *By them*.

8. If Tissaphernes were leading them he would be plotting against them.
9. It is a long time since he furnished a market.
10. We shall use as a guide whomsoever we take.

## WRITTEN

## A. 13-17.

"Our ancestors refused to do homage to Xerxes. And since they conquered him his descendants have not ventured to withstand us. It behooves us then not to disgrace them. Let us be bold for the sake of freedom. We are not at a disadvantage because the adherents of Cyrus left us. Indeed, it is better that they are ranged on the side of the enemy. For they began the flight in the former battle."

## B. 18-21.

"If you are discouraged because the enemy have cavalry, consider that horses never bite any one in battle. Besides, we have an advantage over the horsemen. We are not afraid of falling. It is better to take provisions than to buy them. If Tissaphernes should lead us we should not be able to procure provisions for a small price from the market which he would furnish."

## EXERCISE LII

(*Anabasis III. 2. 22-30.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Until after a Negative*, § 80.
2. *Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse*, § 138.

## ORAL

## A. 22-25.

1. He said that if they thought these things for then advantage they ought not to be discouraged.



2. They thought that, even if the rivers were impassable at a distance from their sources, they were  
• fordable at their sources.
3. They knew that if they could not cross the rivers they could remain in the plains.
4. They said that the king would give guides if they would go away.
5. He heard that the king would have repaired the roads for the Mysians if they had wished to set out for home.

## B. 26-30.

6. They got rid of their wagons in order that they might not cause them trouble.
7. They did not conquer until the soldiers became more obedient to the generals.
8. If the king had seized the generals they would have been destroyed by anarchy.
9. Those who carry baggage are more numerous than those under arms.
10. We shall not overcome the enemy until our generals become more careful.

## WRITTEN

## A. 22-25.

“Consider that, if the rivers are unfordable, the sources are not far off. But even if the rivers constitute a difficulty, we can seize the strongholds and live at our ease here.” Thus spoke Xenophon. He knew that if the king saw them living on the produce of the plains he would be afraid that they would remain. But the Greeks had not yet forgotten the road home.

## B. 26-30.

“Those of the Greeks who are suffering from poverty ought to come here, where it is possible for them to become rich. Let us announce these good things to those

at home. But first burn the tents and whatever baggage causes trouble. These things are of no advantage in procuring food and drink. If the generals are careful and the soldiers orderly, the enemy will not declare war against us."

## EXERCISE LIII

(*Anabasis III. 2. 31-39.*)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Genitive of Comparison, § 35.
2. Wishes, §§ 120-122.

## ORAL

## A. 31-35.

1. They saw privates punishing the disobedient.
2. It is time to ratify whatever seems best.
3. They would not be surprised if the enemy should appear to-day.
4. There are more than twenty villages.
5. All stood up and raised their hands.

## B. 36-39.

6. Let the oldest general lead the army.
7. May we win safety.
8. Would that each had said what seemed best to him.
9. Victory<sup>1</sup> and safety<sup>1</sup> are the same.<sup>2</sup>
10. Let the youngest take care of the baggage.

## WRITTEN

## A. 31-35.

"If you vote that all are to punish the disobedient, there will be more than ten thousand generals. If no one is a coward all will obtain safety. Under these circumstances the enemy will not venture to approach. By raising your right hands now ratify this also, in addition to what I have said. I hear that the enemy, like dogs, will follow us as we pass by."

---

<sup>1</sup> Use infinitives. <sup>2</sup> *ταύτό*.

## B. 36-39.

“Let us make a hollow square in order that we may march in safety wherever it is necessary. Appoint, also, men to lead the wings and bring up the rear. Let us try this arrangement for the present. If any one desires to save his own property let him try to take that of the enemy. Let each consider what is best and may all see their friends again.”

## LESSON LIV

(*Anabasis* III. 3. 1-12.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Genitive of Time, § 36.
2. Too, § 73.
3. Indirect Discourse, §§ 136-138.

## ORAL

## A. 1-5.

1. They resolved to share with each other whatever they did not burn.
2. If you need a faithful friend, summon me.
3. We intend to fight as long as you hinder us from our journey.
4. They were saved during the night against the will of Tissaphernes.
5. They passed a resolution to fight it out with whoever should corrupt the soldiers.

## B. 6-12.

6. They went too far in pursuit to return on the same day.
7. Xenophon said that they did not shoot arrows far enough to reach the horsemen.
8. The hoplites inclosed the archers and slingers.

9. They said that some of the rear guard had been wounded.
10. As they fought they fled.

**WRITTEN**

A. 1-5.

While they were casting their superfluous baggage into the fire Mithridates came with his followers. He said that he would make the expedition with them if they would tell him what they were planning. The generals replied that, if the king permitted them to go away, they would march through the country as quickly as possible. No one else came so long as they were in that country.

B. 6-12.

As they were crossing the river Zapatas about two hundred horsemen appeared. They wounded many of the Cretan archers who were without armor. But they themselves received no injury; for, being nimble, they fled too fast to be overtaken by Xenophon's hoplites. And when the foot-soldiers were returning they were unable to retaliate. The other generals blamed Xenophon, because, in the whole afternoon, he had injured no one.

**EXERCISE LV***(Anabasis III. 3. 13-4. 4.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Consecutive Clauses, §§ 70-72.
2. Participle in Indirect Discourse, §§ 132-133.

**ORAL**

A. 13-18.

1. He heard that they retreated without suffering harm.
2. Many know how to make slings.

3. We ought to find out who are willing to help us by using their slings.
4. They shoot so far that we can not keep them off.
5. I see that those who sling stones do the enemy no harm.

## B. 19-4.

6. Xenophon procured breastplates and captured horses for these men.
7. Perhaps Mithridates will not come up with us if we cross the ravine early.
8. On the signal the horsemen charged boldly.
9. He despised the Greeks because he had attacked them the day before.
10. They promised to harass the barbarians if a sufficient force should support them.<sup>1</sup>

## WRITTEN

## A. 13-18.

“We suffered so at the hands of the enemy that we were obliged to pursue. If they had come in force they would have inflicted greater loss on us. Whenever the Cretans shoot their missiles fall short, and our foot-soldiers can not overtake their archers. We need slingers. I hear that many have slings. If these would use their slings they would help us.”

## B. 19-4.

“Many horses are carrying baggage. If we should use these for cavalry the enemy would not longer harass us.” Next day they placed Lycius in command of two hundred horsemen. Now they heard that Mithridates had asked Tissaphernes for fourteen thousand archers and cavalry. So they were afraid that he would appear before they crossed the ravine; but he did not attack until they had crossed.

## EXERCISE LVI

*(Anabasis III. 4. 5-16.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. *Until*, § 78.
2. *When*, § 85.

## ORAL

## A. 5-12.

1. In the pursuit the Greeks fared well and took several alive.
2. The wall is twenty feet high, ten feet wide, and fifty plethra long.
3. The dead were a frightful sight.
4. A brick tower was situated by the river.
5. They besieged the city until it was taken.

## B. 13-16.

6. A very large army came to the assistance of Tissaphernes.
7. He was married to Artaxerxes's sister.
8. When the Greeks were marching Tissaphernes followed.
9. Xenophon ordered them to shoot until the enemy should withdraw out of range.
10. It was not easy to miss them.

## WRITTEN

## A. 5-12.

On the same day they came to an uninhabited city, which the Medes had built long ago. When the Persians were besieging it a cloud veiled the sun. The Medes fled in terror and the Persians took the city. Afterwards the Greeks came to a second<sup>1</sup> city. It is said that the Persians were unable to take this city, either<sup>2</sup> by siege or<sup>2</sup> by storm, until Zeus made the inhabitants mad.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 21.    <sup>2</sup> § 173.

## B. 13-16.

Tissaphernes in person arranged his companions on the rear and flanks of the Greeks. Then he passed along the word to attack. However, no one dared go nearer. For the Rhodians and Cretans never missed a man, while<sup>1</sup> the arrows and missiles of the barbarians fell short. So they were anxious to withdraw out of range. In this skirmish the Greeks suffered no loss.

## EXERCISE LVII

(*Anabasis* III. 4. 17-27.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Uses of *ἔρεπος*, § 21.
2. *αὐ* with Indicative, § 57.
3. Past General Conditions, § 98.

## ORAL

## A. 17-20.

1. All the strings they came upon they used for their bows.
2. During that day they continued foraging.
3. Whenever the road was narrow they were crowded.
4. If the wings drew apart the center was empty.
5. They knew that each wished to be first to cross.

## B. 21-27.

6. The other wing was attempting to go up the high hill.
7. If they crossed a wide bridge the phalanx used to be disordered.
8. The hoplites gained the second hill.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 182.

9. But there was another village at the foot of the mountain.
10. They annoyed the Greeks that day, wounding many.

## WRITTEN

A. 17-20.

As they were foraging the next day Tissaphernes came upon them, but he got the worst of it. For, in the skirmish, they used the arrows they found. However, he continued following them. Their arrangement was bad. For whenever there were mountains or bridges it was necessary to draw the wings together, so that the men were thrown into disorder. Under these circumstances they became discouraged.

B. 21-27.

The wings would draw together if they came to a bridge or a ford. Then the six companies waited, so that the sides of the square were not disordered. The next day, when they were ascending a hill to the other village, which was at the foot of a mountain, many were wounded. For the barbarians pressed them hard by shooting down hill. In this way the light-armed troops were vanquished.

## EXERCISE LVIII

*(Anabasis III. 4. 28-39.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Uses of *ἄλλος*, § 20.
2. Infinitive Expressing Negative Purpose, § 63.
3. Negative with Infinitive, § 175.

## ORAL

A. 28-34.

1. Whenever the rest of the troops ascended another hill the barbarians attacked again.



2. The others tried to surround the enemy.
3. They decided not to appoint physicians.
4. There is a great difference between camping in a village and marching and fighting.
5. They remained until the wounded could march.

B. 35-39.

6. They generally led their horses in order that, if an uproar arose, they might mount them easily.
7. They marched so far that the enemy did not come up with them until the fourth day.
8. It was an advantage to camp at a distance from the Greeks.
9. A hill had been seized which commanded the descent to the plain.
10. He brought up troops from the rear to prevent the enemy from attacking.

WRITTEN

A. 28-34.

They did not withdraw their troops until the peltasts got above the enemy. But they did not cut the enemy off. For, fearing that the Greeks would attack them, they ascended the mountain. When the Greeks were descending into the plain Tissaphernes again skirmished with them. So they decided not to fight on the march, and encamped in the first village.

B. 35-39.

When the barbarians saw the Greeks packing up they did not encamp until it was late. Then notice was given to the Greeks to break camp. For they thought it would be an advantage to be a long way from the enemy. But during the night the enemy seized a hill to prevent the Greeks passing by. So they had to seize another hill commanding the enemy's position.

## EXERCISE LIX

*(Anabasis III. 4. 40—5. 2.)*

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Reflexive Pronouns, §§ 17-19.
2. *φθάρω* with Participle, § 161.

## ORAL

## A. 40-45.

1. He bade Xenophon bring up his own men from the rear.
2. But Xenophon ordered Cheirisophus to give him picked men.
3. He saw them encourage their own men.
4. They considered how they would most quickly take the hill.
5. Choose whichever of the (two) paths you wish.

## B. 46-2.

6. Tissaphernes and his men<sup>1</sup> got the start in descending into the plain.
7. A certain soldier abused Xenophon until he dismounted.
8. And he took the shield from the man.
9. The cattle happened to be scattered in the plain.
10. Tissaphernes turned and went away.

## WRITTEN

## A. 40-45.

"It is best to dislodge the enemy from the summit of the hill," said Xenophon, "but do not leave the rear unprotected. For the enemy may appear while we are dashing up the hill." He preferred to take men from the van. He also ordered peltasts to follow him. And the rest of the Greeks encouraged them as they were dislodging the enemy.

---

<sup>1</sup> *οἱ περὶ* T.

## B. 46-2.

Xenophon hastened on horseback until the road up became impassable. But while he was riding the others followed with difficulty, being encumbered with their shields. However, they took the place without a blow. For the enemy descended into the plain by another road. But the Greeks reached the river first and cut off some who were crossing to the other side for plunder. The Greeks encamped, scattered in the villages.

## EXERCISE LX

(*Anabasis* III. 5. 3-18.)

Prepare the following constructions and find examples of each in the text:

1. Potential Indicative, § 99.
2. Virtual Indirect Discourse, § 139.

## ORAL

## A. 3-12.

1. They fear that if they burn the villages they will not be able to procure provisions.
2. He needed bags, anchors, and timber.
3. Being discouraged, they were at a loss what to do.
4. They resolved to prevent their crossing.
5. He stipulated that they should provide whatever he needed.

## B. 13-18.

6. They intended to go back.
7. The country to the north led to Armenia.
8. He passes the order around that whenever they shall have<sup>1</sup> packed up they are to set out.
9. Wherever they went they saw that the country was prosperous.
10. Whenever the barbarians were warlike they made a treaty with them.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 89.

## WRITTEN

## A. 3-12.

When the Greeks saw Tissaphernes burning the villages great discouragement arose. Some feared that if they did not get provisions they would not be able to march. For on one side was the enemy, on the other the mountains. Others thought that the enemy conceded that the country was theirs. Otherwise<sup>1</sup> they would not have burned it. One said that if they would give him what he needed and a talent he would take the army across.

## B. 13-18.

The Greeks were at a loss whether to march north or south or east or west. The captains said that if they invaded the Carduchi they would never return, because they had no dealings with Greeks or Persians. Nevertheless the generals, after consultation,<sup>2</sup> decided to march to Armenia if no one seized the pass in advance.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 93.    <sup>2</sup> *Having considered*, § 160.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES<sup>1</sup>

---

COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATIONS

---

EXERCISE LXI

One of the captains,<sup>2</sup> however, happened to be present, and he rose and spoke as follows: "I hear, soldiers, that our general intends<sup>3</sup> to found<sup>4</sup> a city here, thinking that in this way<sup>5</sup> he will acquire power and territory for Hellas and a great name for himself. What do you intend to do about it? If I saw you willing to remain, I should keep silence,<sup>6</sup> but as I know you are unwilling I have spoken while prevention is still possible."<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The student should read carefully the directions given in §§ 199-203 before attempting these selections. Exercises LXI-LXXIV have appeared, during the last ten years, in the entrance and honor examinations of various colleges in the United States and Canada. The other exercises are taken from literary sources. It is expected that at this stage the student will be familiar with the Greek equivalents for the simpler words in the selections. For the adjectives and adverbs see pp. 242, 243. Many words and phrases will be found in the Word-lists, pp. 211-241, reference to which is facilitated by an index. The index does not contain all the words of the lists, but only those that occur in the Supplementary Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> Word-list 25. <sup>3</sup> III. 3. 2. <sup>4</sup> Word-list 14. <sup>5</sup> *Thus* (I. 8. 22). <sup>6</sup> I. 3. 2. <sup>7</sup> *It being still* (I. 5. 12) *possible* (II. 5. 22) *to prevent* (I. 2. 21) *him*.

## EXERCISE LXII

Certain of the soldiers once<sup>1</sup> had a dispute<sup>2</sup> about something, and Clearchus struck the man whom he thought to blame.<sup>3</sup> He, however, told his fellow-soldiers<sup>4</sup> (for he belonged to Menon's army, and not to Clearchus's), and they, on hearing it, were very angry at Clearchus. Later<sup>5</sup> on the same day, as Clearchus was riding through Menon's camp, the men threw stones at him. Upon this<sup>6</sup> Clearchus ordered his men to arms, and was about to make an attack. But just<sup>7</sup> then Proxenus and others happened to come up<sup>8</sup> and stopped<sup>9</sup> them, saying, "If the barbarians should see you fighting thus, be assured<sup>10</sup> that all the Greeks here would be utterly destroyed."<sup>11</sup>

## EXERCISE LXIII

After the battle, Cyrus being now<sup>12</sup> dead, the king sent heralds<sup>13</sup> to demand<sup>14</sup> of the Greeks their arms. On hearing this Clearchus, who happened to be sacrificing,<sup>15</sup> left the other generals for a short time, saying that he would return immediately.<sup>16</sup> Thereupon Proxenus asked whether the king demanded the arms as gifts by way of<sup>17</sup> friendship, or as being himself victorious. For if he asks them as victor why need<sup>18</sup> he ask? Why doesn't he rather<sup>19</sup> come and take them? Another of the bystanders<sup>20</sup> told the heralds that they would not surrender the only blessings<sup>21</sup> they possessed.<sup>22</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 9. 6.    <sup>2</sup> Word-list 10.    <sup>3</sup> I. 4. 15.    <sup>4</sup> I. 2. 26.    <sup>5</sup> I. 3. 2.  
<sup>6</sup> *Thereupon* (I. 10. 1).    <sup>7</sup> § 185.    <sup>8</sup> *πρός* in composition.    <sup>9</sup> II. 5. 2.  
<sup>10</sup> *Know well*.    <sup>11</sup> *Cut to pieces*; Word-list 19.  
<sup>12</sup> § 194.    <sup>13</sup> Word-list 28.    <sup>14</sup> I. 1. 10.    <sup>15</sup> I. 7. 18.    <sup>16</sup> I. 8. 1.  
<sup>17</sup> *By way of*, *διὰ* with the accusative.    <sup>18</sup> *Why is it necessary for him to ask?*    <sup>19</sup> Omit.    <sup>20</sup> *Bystanders*, *παρά* in composition; cf. § 7.    <sup>21</sup> *Good things*.    <sup>22</sup> I. 7. 3, § 186.

## EXERCISE LXIV

The guide said that in five days he would lead them to a place whence<sup>1</sup> they would see the sea. And he bade them put him to death if he should<sup>2</sup> not do this. The Greeks accordingly followed him, although fearing that they might be deceived.<sup>3</sup> For other guides also had made great promises.<sup>4</sup> And the men through whose country they were now marching were more warlike than the Persians, so that it was necessary for them to fight continually. But after a short time it became evident<sup>5</sup> that he had told the truth.<sup>6</sup>

## EXERCISE LXV

The king himself was frightened when the Greeks encamped near<sup>7</sup> him in the night. This was made<sup>8</sup> evident the following day; for before<sup>9</sup> he had commanded them to surrender arms, but now he sent heralds to ask for a truce.<sup>10</sup> Clearchus, however, told the guards to bid the heralds wait until he should be at leisure<sup>11</sup>; and when finally they came, he asked what they wanted. They said they had come about a truce. He, on hearing this, said: "Report to the king that we must fight first; for we have no breakfast,<sup>12</sup> and unless you provide breakfast, don't dare<sup>13</sup> to talk about a truce." These bold words frightened the Persians still<sup>14</sup> more.

<sup>1</sup>I. 2. 8.    <sup>2</sup>§ 139.    <sup>3</sup>I. 8. 11.    <sup>4</sup>*Promised great things.*  
<sup>5</sup>§ 135.    <sup>6</sup>I. 7. 18.  
<sup>7</sup>II. 4. 1.    <sup>8</sup>*Became.*    <sup>9</sup>I. 3. 18.    <sup>10</sup>I. 9. 8.    <sup>11</sup>*σχολάζω.*  
<sup>12</sup>*Have no breakfast* (I. 10. 19).    <sup>13</sup>II. 2. 12.    <sup>14</sup>I. 9. 10.

## EXERCISE LXVI

Some<sup>1</sup> say that Darius and Parysatis had four sons, but Xenophon names<sup>2</sup> only two, Artaxerxes and Cyrus. Both<sup>3</sup> were at hand when their father died, and they were already<sup>4</sup> at enmity with<sup>5</sup> each other. Artaxerxes, indeed,<sup>6</sup> was the elder, but Cyrus, although younger, was plotting<sup>7</sup> to become king instead of him. The mother, too, loved Cyrus more than her other<sup>8</sup> son, and so took sides with him. But after the death of Darius, Artaxerxes, and not Cyrus, came to the throne, whereupon the latter<sup>9</sup> wished to return to the country of which he was satrap. But the king knew of Cyrus's plot, and ordered Tissaphernes to arrest him. Then Cyrus would have been put to death if his mother had not persuaded the king to let<sup>10</sup> him go away from Persia.<sup>11</sup> On his arrival in Sardis he did not forget<sup>12</sup> his former<sup>13</sup> plot,<sup>14</sup> but began<sup>15</sup> to prepare<sup>16</sup> an expedition<sup>17</sup> for the purpose of conquering Artaxerxes. Everybody knows what Xenophon has written about this expedition.

## EXERCISE LXVII

When Cyrus had routed the six thousand who were posted in front of the king, his cavalry rushed forward to the pursuit. Thus Cyrus himself was left almost alone,<sup>18</sup> with only a few friends about<sup>19</sup> him. At this crisis<sup>20</sup> he saw the king not far away.<sup>21</sup> If Cyrus had restrained himself and had waited until others came to his aid<sup>22</sup> he might

<sup>1</sup> I. 7. 5. <sup>2</sup> ἀνομιάζω. <sup>3</sup> I. 5. 17. <sup>4</sup> § 194. <sup>5</sup> Hostile to. <sup>6</sup> § 181. <sup>7</sup> § 67. <sup>8</sup> § 21. <sup>9</sup> § 24. <sup>10</sup> I. 4. 7. <sup>11</sup> ἡ Περσική. <sup>12</sup> III. 2. 25. <sup>13</sup> I. 4. 8. <sup>14</sup> II. 5. 1. <sup>15</sup> I. 3. 1. <sup>16</sup> III. 2. 24. <sup>17</sup> Use a verb; Word-list 26.

<sup>18</sup> Omit *almost alone*. <sup>19</sup> II. 4. 2. <sup>20</sup> *At this crisis* (I. 7. 9). <sup>21</sup> *Far away* (I. 3. 12). <sup>22</sup> *To aid him* (II. 4. 20).



have won the victory and slain the king. But, crying that he saw his brother, he rode at him and wounded him with his javelin in the breast. This is related by Ctesias, the king's physician, in his book<sup>1</sup> about the Persian empire.<sup>2</sup> The same man says also that somebody hit Cyrus under the eye with a javelin, and that the followers<sup>3</sup> of the king and Cyrus fought with one another for a long time. But nobody knows who killed Cyrus; he was found<sup>4</sup> dead,<sup>5</sup> however, after the battle, in the midst of<sup>6</sup> his friends, who fell about him fighting over his body.<sup>7</sup>

### EXERCISE LXVIII

After this the Greeks breakfasted<sup>8</sup> and crossed the river. They then marched into the enemy's<sup>9</sup> country; but no one attacked them until Mithridates again appeared with two hundred cavalry and four hundred bowmen. He approached at first as if<sup>10</sup> he were a friend of the Greeks, but when he came nearer<sup>11</sup> his cavalry attacked the rear guard, many of whom were wounded. Upon this Xenophon ordered his soldiers to pursue the enemy; but although they followed them a long distance,<sup>12</sup> they caught none of the Persians, for the Greeks had no cavalry and their foot-soldiers could not overtake<sup>13</sup> the Persians as they fled.<sup>14</sup> And some of the elder generals blamed<sup>15</sup> Xenophon because he tried to pursue the enemy and was himself in danger<sup>16</sup> but could not injure any one.<sup>17</sup> And he, on hearing this, said that they blamed him rightly.<sup>18</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> II. 1. 1. <sup>2</sup> I. 5. 9. <sup>3</sup> *Those with.* <sup>4</sup> I. 2. 25. <sup>5</sup> I. 6. 11. <sup>6</sup> *In the midst of* (III. 3. 6). <sup>7</sup> IV. 2. 18.

<sup>8</sup> III. 3. 6. <sup>9</sup> Use an adjective. <sup>10</sup> §154. <sup>11</sup> I. 8. 8. <sup>12</sup> *A long distance* (I. 5. 3). <sup>13</sup> Word-list 20. <sup>14</sup> §157. <sup>15</sup> III. 1. 7. <sup>16</sup> I. 1. 4. <sup>17</sup> §173 (a). <sup>18</sup> *Justly.*

## EXERCISE LXIX

Thence the Greeks marched three days through the land of the Macrones. There one of the soldiers came to Xenophon, and said that this was his native country,<sup>1</sup> and that he had been a slave<sup>2</sup> at Athens<sup>3</sup> and knew the language<sup>4</sup> of the people.<sup>5</sup> The generals commanded him to ask why they had arrayed themselves against the Greeks, and to say that the Greeks wished to come to the sea that they might depart for Greece. They replied that they would give pledges and would supply a market, and would carry<sup>6</sup> them in three days to the borders<sup>7</sup> of the Colchians. Then they gave a lance<sup>8</sup> to the Greeks, and they received a Greek lance; and both called the gods to witness.<sup>9</sup> When the Greeks advanced they saw the Colchians arrayed on a high hill, and they arrayed themselves against them.<sup>10</sup>

## EXERCISE LXX

At this time two messengers arrived from Thibron, announcing that the Lacedaemonians were now taking the field against Tissaphernes, and that Thibron had sailed out to make war on the satrap. They also said that Thibron, who was in need of<sup>11</sup> the Greek army, promised a daric a month as pay to each man. So Heracleides went and told this to Seuthes. "The Lacedaemonians," said he, "now need<sup>11</sup> the Greek army, while you no longer<sup>12</sup> need it. You will not only do a favor<sup>13</sup> to them by<sup>14</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Native country* (I. 3. 3). <sup>2</sup> δουλεύω. <sup>3</sup> Ἀθήνησι. <sup>4</sup> I. 2. 24.  
<sup>5</sup> I. 5. 9. <sup>6</sup> I. 4. 13. <sup>7</sup> τὰ ὅρια. <sup>8</sup> I. 8. 8. <sup>9</sup> *Called to witness*,  
 ἐπιμαρτύρομαι (acc.). <sup>10</sup> *Against (them)*, express by preposition in  
 composition.

<sup>11</sup> *Be in need of*, δέομαι (I. 9. 21). <sup>12</sup> I. 8. 17. <sup>13</sup> I. 9. 24. <sup>14</sup> § 152.

giving the army up, but the soldiers will also cease<sup>1</sup> asking for pay, and will depart from your country." When he heard this Senthes desired to see the messengers. Thereupon they were brought in, and said that they had come to get<sup>2</sup> the Greek army. He replied that he would give it up, and that he wished to be a friend and ally. Then he invited them to a banquet<sup>3</sup> and entertained them magnificently.

### EXERCISE LXXI

Pharnabazus, the governor of Phrygia, had long<sup>4</sup> been the friend and the ally of the Spartans, and had never said or done anything treacherous<sup>5</sup> against them. He made their fleet<sup>6</sup> strong by providing<sup>7</sup> money, and on land fought on their side.<sup>8</sup> But they were not grateful to him, although he was so friendly; for they burned down all<sup>9</sup> the beautiful houses and parks which<sup>9</sup> his father had left him that<sup>10</sup> he might take pleasure in<sup>11</sup> them; and sometimes they fell in with<sup>12</sup> his slaves and slew them. Agesilaus also marched into his country, burned some cities and plundered others. All this was done while the Spartans and Pharnabazus were allies. At length the governor,<sup>13</sup> since he could no longer enjoy<sup>14</sup> his own property, was compelled to go to war with those who had wronged him; "for," said he, "I have not a meal<sup>15</sup> in my country, unless, like the beasts, I pick up<sup>16</sup> what<sup>17</sup> you leave."

---

<sup>1</sup> § 163. <sup>2</sup> *To get*, ἐνί with accusative. <sup>3</sup> Word-list 13.

<sup>4</sup> § 53. <sup>5</sup> διπλοῦς. <sup>6</sup> τὸ ναυτικόν. <sup>7</sup> II. 3. 5. <sup>8</sup> οὐ πολέμειω. <sup>9</sup> *All which*, § 100. <sup>10</sup> *That in them*, ἐφ' ὧν. <sup>11</sup> *Take pleasure in* (I. 9. 26). <sup>12</sup> *Fell in with* (I. 8. 1). <sup>13</sup> Word-list 17. <sup>14</sup> *Use*. <sup>15</sup> II. 4. 15. <sup>16</sup> *Collect*. <sup>17</sup> A conditional relative, § 103.

## EXERCISE LXXII

The soldiers remained in this place a week,<sup>1</sup> for here they found abundant provisions, grain, wine, and all kinds of<sup>2</sup> meat. And they asked the headman of the village,<sup>3</sup> through an interpreter who spoke Persian, what country it was. He said it was Armenia. When they had rested<sup>4</sup> and the officers<sup>5</sup> had got better horses, they began their march through the snow.<sup>6</sup> The headman went along with Cheirisophus in the van as guide, while his son was given over as hostage<sup>7</sup> to Episthenes, who treated<sup>8</sup> him kindly.<sup>9</sup> But on the third day Cheirisophus became angry at the guide because he did not lead them to any villages, and beat him. He did not bind<sup>10</sup> him, however, and the next night the headman escaped, leaving<sup>11</sup> his son behind. Xenophon blamed Cheirisophus for<sup>12</sup> his carelessness,<sup>13</sup> and told him also that if he had not ill-treated the man he would not have run away.<sup>14</sup> The army was now compelled<sup>15</sup> to march without a guide.

## EXERCISE LXXIII

Once,<sup>16</sup> when Xerxes was marching into Europe and the Greeks saw many grave dangers before<sup>17</sup> them, they sent an embassy<sup>18</sup> to Crete, and asked the Cretans to help them against the Great King. The Cretans immediately despatched messengers to Delphi to ask the god whether

---

<sup>1</sup> *Seven days.* <sup>2</sup> *All kinds of* (I. 5. 2). <sup>3</sup> *Headman of the village* (IV. 5. 10). <sup>4</sup> I. 10. 16. <sup>5</sup> *Generals and captains.* <sup>6</sup> IV. 4. 8.

<sup>7</sup> *Word-list 28.* <sup>8</sup> *Used.* <sup>9</sup> *As a friend.* <sup>10</sup> III. 5. 10. <sup>11</sup> *Aor. partic.*

<sup>12</sup> *On account of.* <sup>13</sup> *ἀμέλεια.* <sup>14</sup> *Run away* (I. 4. 8). <sup>15</sup> II. 1. 6.

<sup>16</sup> *Page 181, note 1.* <sup>17</sup> *Saw many and great dangers* (δεῖν) *approaching* (I. 7. 5), or *many terrible things appearing before them* (II. 3. 13). <sup>18</sup> *Ambassadors, Word-list 28.*

they should gain any advantage<sup>1</sup> if they went to the aid of Greece. And Apollo answered: "You Cretans seem not to remember<sup>2</sup> that the Greeks have already received many benefits at your hands,<sup>3</sup> for which they feel no gratitude.<sup>4</sup> For your ancestors<sup>5</sup> joined<sup>6</sup> with them in their expedition against Troy, when the wife of Menelaus was carried off<sup>7</sup> by a barbarian. Nevertheless when your own king Minos was murdered in Sicily they refused<sup>8</sup> to help<sup>9</sup> you in punishing the murderers."<sup>10</sup> When the Cretans heard that, they were so angry at the Greeks that they refused to help them, and took no part in<sup>11</sup> the war with<sup>12</sup> the Persians.

### EXERCISE LXXIV

And after him Mardonius spoke: "Not only,<sup>13</sup> my lord,<sup>14</sup> art thou the noblest<sup>15</sup> of living Persians, but likewise of those yet unborn.<sup>16</sup> Most true are all the words which thou hast spoken. But best of all is thy resolve<sup>17</sup> not to let<sup>18</sup> the Greeks who live in Europe and who are a worthless race<sup>19</sup> mock<sup>20</sup> us any more.<sup>21</sup> It were, indeed, a monstrous thing,<sup>22</sup> if after conquering and enslaving<sup>23</sup> the Assyrians and many other mighty nations not for any wrong they had done us,<sup>24</sup> but only from a wish<sup>25</sup> to increase our empire,<sup>26</sup> we should not then punish the

---

<sup>1</sup> *It would prove (become) better for them.* <sup>2</sup> I. 7. 5. <sup>3</sup> *Received . . . hands* (I. 3. 4). <sup>4</sup> I. 4. 15. <sup>5</sup> III. 2. 11. <sup>6</sup> *Express by a preposition in composition.* <sup>7</sup> *Carried off* (I. 2. 27). <sup>8</sup> § 128.

<sup>9</sup> *συμπράττειν* (dat.). <sup>10</sup> *φονεύς*. <sup>11</sup> *Took part in*, § 39. <sup>12</sup> *Against.*

<sup>13</sup> § 195. <sup>14</sup> II. 3. 15. <sup>15</sup> *εὐγενής*. <sup>16</sup> *Yet unborn, fut. partic. of εἶμι.* <sup>17</sup> *δύξα*. <sup>18</sup> I. 4. 7. <sup>19</sup> I. 8. 9. <sup>20</sup> II. 6. 30. <sup>21</sup> *Any more* (I. 5. 12). <sup>22</sup> I. 9. 3. <sup>23</sup> *καταδουλώ*. <sup>24</sup> *Say, And that too* (I. 4. 12) *not having been injured by them in any respect; cf. § 175, obs.* <sup>25</sup> *From a wish, participle.* <sup>26</sup> *To acquire additional* (*προσκόδομαι*) *country.*

Greeks who have done us such wanton<sup>1</sup> injury. What is it that we fear? Their numbers or the greatness of their wealth? We know the manner<sup>2</sup> of their battles and how weak their power is, for already we have subdued their children who dwell in our country.”

---

## ORIGINAL SELECTIONS

---

### EXERCISE LXXV

The Pasha then rode along the front of his host and spoke to his men as follows: “Brave comrades, now you see the enemy with your own eyes.<sup>3</sup> I will not say whether their numbers are great or small,<sup>4</sup> for you can see for yourselves. They are many more than we, but trust in Allah and fight bravely; it is more honorable to fall here, sword in hand,<sup>5</sup> than to disgrace<sup>6</sup> your country by flight.<sup>7</sup> We are in the middle of Transylvania; whoever runs away will be hunted down<sup>8</sup> by the pursuers before he can get to the borders, but even if any one should escape,<sup>9</sup> the Sultan will have him killed. We have no choice but victory or death.”<sup>10</sup>—*Maurus Jokai (translation)*.

NOTE.—Treat this passage as if it were an address by Clearchus to the Greeks after the death of Cyrus; cf. § 203.

---

<sup>1</sup> Not being themselves injured. <sup>2</sup> § 144.

<sup>3</sup> Your own eyes, *attrbs.* <sup>4</sup> That they are many or that they are few. <sup>5</sup> Having your (§ 6) arms. <sup>6</sup> III. 1. 30. <sup>7</sup> Use a participle.

<sup>8</sup> Captured. <sup>9</sup> I. 4. 8. <sup>10</sup> We must conquer or die.

## EXERCISE LXXVI

A great number of French marched to Trie, intending<sup>1</sup> to pass over the Scheldt; but those of the town<sup>2</sup> had destroyed the bridge, and defended that passage.<sup>3</sup> Nor could the French ever have conquered<sup>4</sup> it if some among them had not been acquainted with the fords of the river and the country, who conducted<sup>5</sup> upward of<sup>6</sup> two hundred men to the bridge at Prouvy. When these had crossed over they came and fell upon<sup>7</sup> the men of Trie, who, being few in number,<sup>8</sup> were not able to resist;<sup>9</sup> so they took to their heels, and many of them were killed and wounded.—*Froissart*.

NOTE.—French = Greeks. Trie = Thapsacus. Men of Trie (I. 4. 18). Scheldt = Euphrates. Prouvy = Dardas.

## EXERCISE LXXVII

From thence the lords of France<sup>10</sup> proceeded to Ancenis, which is at the extremity<sup>11</sup> of the kingdom. They remained there three days for the purpose of arranging their army and baggage.<sup>12</sup> Upon entering Brittany they numbered their forces and found them to amount to<sup>13</sup> five thousand men at arms, without counting<sup>14</sup> the Genoese, who were at least three thousand. There was also a large body of foot soldiers led<sup>15</sup> by Sir Gaulois de Baume. When the whole army had marched out of Ancenis they advanced towards a very strong castle, situated upon a

<sup>1</sup> § 64. <sup>2</sup> Say *those from the city*, or use the proper name.

<sup>3</sup> *Guarded that crossing* (I. 5. 12). <sup>4</sup> *Crossed by force* (I. 4. 4).

<sup>5</sup> IV. 6. 2. <sup>6</sup> *More than*. <sup>7</sup> Word-list 4. <sup>8</sup> *Omit in number*.

<sup>9</sup> III. 2. 11.

<sup>10</sup> *The Greek generals*. <sup>11</sup> *At the extremity* (I. 4. 1). <sup>12</sup> *Baggage-train*; Word-list 3. <sup>13</sup> *And found them*, etc. = *which amounted to*, etc. (I. 2. 9). <sup>14</sup> *Omit counting*. <sup>15</sup> I. 2. 1.

high mountain, called Chateau Ceaux, on the borders<sup>1</sup> of Brittany. It was under the command of two knights from Lorraine. The lords of France, on drawing near to this castle, were of opinion<sup>2</sup> to besiege it; for if they left a place of so much strength behind them it would do them much harm.<sup>3</sup>—*Froissart*.

## EXERCISE LXXVIII

The rebels<sup>4</sup> entered Placites, the most important<sup>5</sup> town in Santa Clara Province, remaining from 7 P.M. until 4 A.M.<sup>6</sup> They sacked<sup>7</sup> the stores,<sup>8</sup> but burned no houses. Twenty Spaniards were killed. The rebels were commanded by Chico Montiaquito, and it is said<sup>9</sup> he entered the town without resistance<sup>10</sup> on account of<sup>11</sup> the officers of the garrison<sup>12</sup> being relatives<sup>13</sup> of some of the insurgents.

The relieving expedition was under the command of Colonel Tovar,<sup>14</sup> who, with his brigade, marched along the left bank of the Cauto River, meeting detached<sup>15</sup> parties<sup>16</sup> of rebels at various places along the route. At Cyamo the insurgents were gathered in quite strong force,<sup>17</sup> but after a short engagement they were driven from the town. The Spanish force then proceeded to Guanamo, where they found that the insurgents who had been attempting the capture of the fort had disappeared.<sup>18</sup>—*Press Despatches, December, 1896.*

---

<sup>1</sup> IV. 8. 8. <sup>2</sup> It seemed good to. <sup>3</sup> For they thought if they passed by . . . it would cause them trouble (I. 1. 11).

<sup>4</sup> The enemy. <sup>5</sup> Flourishing. <sup>6</sup> Simply the whole night. <sup>7</sup> Plundered. <sup>8</sup> I. 2. 24. <sup>9</sup> § 129. <sup>10</sup> Without resistance (I. 2. 22). <sup>11</sup> § 113. <sup>12</sup> The garrison commander (I. 1. 6) and his lieutenants (I. 2. 20). <sup>13</sup> I. 6. 1. <sup>14</sup> Clearchus, who was in command of those going to the rescue (II. 4. 20), marching with his (men) . . . met (I. 2. 27). <sup>15</sup> Omit. <sup>16</sup> IV. 2. 16. <sup>17</sup> In . . . force (III. 3. 14). <sup>18</sup> I. 4. 7.



## EXERCISE LXXIX

I have warriors, provisions, and ammunition<sup>1</sup> to defend<sup>2</sup> this fort three years against<sup>3</sup> all the Indians in<sup>4</sup> the woods;<sup>4</sup> and we shall never abandon it as long as a white man lives in America. I despise<sup>5</sup> the Ottawas, and am very much surprised<sup>6</sup> at our brothers, the Delawares, for proposing<sup>7</sup> to us to leave this place and go home. You have attacked us without provocation;<sup>8</sup> you have murdered and plundered our warriors and traders;<sup>9</sup> you have taken our horses and cattle;<sup>10</sup> and at the same time you tell us your hearts are good<sup>11</sup> towards your brethren,<sup>12</sup> the English. How can I have faith<sup>13</sup> in you? Therefore, now, brothers, I will advise you to go home to your towns and take care of<sup>14</sup> your wives and children.—*Parkman.*

## EXERCISE LXXX

The armies being now near each other, the men of Galloway charged with a shout. They fought for two hours<sup>15</sup> with the greatest fury,<sup>16</sup> and made such slaughter among the English spearmen that they began to give way. But the archers supported<sup>17</sup> them and showered their arrows so thick<sup>18</sup> upon the Galloway men that, having no defensive armor to resist the shot,<sup>19</sup> they became dismayed, and began to retreat. Prince Henry of Scotland advanced to their support with the men-at-arms.<sup>20</sup> He rushed at

---

<sup>1</sup> *Arms.* <sup>2</sup> *To ward off from* (I. 3. 6, § 70). <sup>3</sup> *From.* <sup>4</sup> I. 5. 1. <sup>5</sup> III. 4. 2; cf. § 39. <sup>6</sup> *I am . . . surprised* (I. 3. 3) *that our*, etc. <sup>7</sup> II. 3. 20. <sup>8</sup> *Without having been wronged* (§ 159). <sup>9</sup> *ἔμπερος*. <sup>10</sup> II. 1. 6. <sup>11</sup> *You are well disposed* (§ 46). <sup>12</sup> *Allies.* <sup>13</sup> § 46. <sup>14</sup> *Take care of* (I. 1. 5). <sup>15</sup> *A long time.* <sup>16</sup> *With . . . fury;* use an adverb in the superlative. <sup>17</sup> *Assisted* (I. 1. 9). <sup>18</sup> *Shot so fiercely that the Greeks*, etc. <sup>19</sup> *No . . . shot* (IV. 3. 6). <sup>20</sup> *Cavalry.*

full gallop on that part of the English line which was opposed to him<sup>1</sup> and broke through<sup>2</sup> it. He then attacked the rear of<sup>3</sup> the English; the men of Galloway rallied<sup>4</sup> and were about<sup>5</sup> to renew the contest<sup>6</sup> when an English soldier showed<sup>7</sup> the head of a slain man on a spear, and called out that it was the king of Scots. The falsehood was believed by the Scottish army<sup>8</sup> who fell into confusion<sup>9</sup> and fled.—*Sir Walter Scott.*

NOTE.—It will be helpful to read I. 8, 17 ff. before translating this passage.

## EXERCISE LXXXI

Something is left<sup>10</sup> to tell. I fled from the country of the Halakazi, nor did I linger at all<sup>11</sup> in the land of the Swazis, but came on swiftly into the land of the Zulus. Now it was in my mind to go to Chaka, king of the Zulus, and tell him of my wrongs,<sup>12</sup> asking that he would send an impi<sup>13</sup> to make an end of the Halakazi. But while I journeyed, finding food and shelter<sup>14</sup> as I might,<sup>15</sup> I came one night to the kraal<sup>16</sup> of an old man who knew<sup>17</sup> Chaka and had known my father, and to him, when I had stayed there two days, I told my tale. But the old man counseled<sup>18</sup> me against my plan,<sup>19</sup> saying that Chaka, the king, did not love shoots from the royal stock<sup>20</sup> and would kill me.—*Rider Haggard.*

<sup>1</sup> That . . . him, i.e., those opposed to him (I. 8. 21).

<sup>2</sup> Broke through (IV. 8. 11). <sup>3</sup> In the rear (I. 10. 6). <sup>4</sup> Word-list 4. <sup>5</sup> I. 8. 1. <sup>6</sup> To fight again. <sup>7</sup> I. 2. 14. <sup>8</sup> The army thinking that the man spoke the truth (I. 7. 18). <sup>9</sup> Fell into confusion (III. 4. 19).

<sup>10</sup> III. 2. 29. <sup>11</sup> Not remaining anywhere (I. 10. 16); cf. § 173 (a).

<sup>12</sup> The things which I had suffered (I. 3. 5). <sup>13</sup> Impi=company; Word-list 2. <sup>14</sup> Passing the night; Word-list 5. <sup>15</sup> I. 8. 15.

<sup>16</sup> Kraal=village. <sup>17</sup> II. 6. 1. <sup>18</sup> I. 7. 9. <sup>19</sup> Not to do what I intended. <sup>20</sup> Shoots . . . stock (I. 6. 1).

## EXERCISE LXXXII

Colonel Armstrong raised three hundred men with a view<sup>1</sup> to the effectual destruction<sup>2</sup> of the Susquehannah villages<sup>3</sup> and proceeded to Great Island.<sup>4</sup> On this island were situated the principal<sup>5</sup> villages of the enemy. But the Indians had vanished,<sup>6</sup> abandoning their houses, their cornfields,<sup>7</sup> their stolen<sup>8</sup> horses and cattle. Leaving a detachment to burn the towns and lay waste the fields,<sup>9</sup> Armstrong, with the main body<sup>10</sup> of his men, followed close<sup>11</sup> on the trail<sup>12</sup> of the fugitives; and, pursuing them through a rugged and difficult country, soon arrived at another village, thirty miles<sup>13</sup> above<sup>14</sup> the former. His scouts<sup>15</sup> informed them that the place was full of Indians; and his men, forming a circle around<sup>16</sup> it, rushed in upon the cabins at a given signal,<sup>17</sup> but the Indians were gone.—*Parkman.*

## EXERCISE LXXXIII

While the king of England was besieging the city of<sup>18</sup> Cambray with full forty thousand men at arms, and pressing it closely<sup>19</sup> by different assaults,<sup>20</sup> the king of France assembled his forces at<sup>21</sup> Peronne. About this time the king of England called a council of those from

---

<sup>1</sup> § 64. <sup>2</sup> *Effectual destruction* (III. 2. 11). <sup>3</sup> *Villages situated on the river.* <sup>4</sup> II. 4. 22. <sup>5</sup> *Largest.* <sup>6</sup> Page 191, note 18. <sup>7</sup> The word for *millet fields* in II. 4. 13 is a good equivalent; cf. § 202. <sup>8</sup> I. 2. 27. <sup>9</sup> *ἀγροί.* <sup>10</sup> *Main body;* Word-list 2. <sup>11</sup> *Express by ἐνί in composition.* <sup>12</sup> I. 6. 1. <sup>13</sup> A mile is about ten stadia; thirty stadia=a parasang. <sup>14</sup> *Which was thirty miles from* (II. 4. 10). <sup>15</sup> II. 2. 15. <sup>16</sup> *Forming . . . around, περικυκλῶμαι.* <sup>17</sup> *At . . . signal;* Word-list 32.

<sup>18</sup> § 2. <sup>19</sup> *Pressing it closely* (I. 1. 10). <sup>20</sup> III. 4. 2. <sup>21</sup> I. 1. 2.

his own country, and particularly<sup>1</sup> Sir Robert d' Artois, in whom he had much confidence,<sup>2</sup> and demanded of them whether it were best<sup>3</sup> to enter the kingdom of France, and go to meet his adversary, or to remain before Cambray until he should have taken it. The lords of England, seeing<sup>4</sup> the city was strong and well provided<sup>5</sup> with men, provisions, and artillery,<sup>6</sup> that the winter<sup>7</sup> was approaching<sup>8</sup> fast, and that they were there at a very great expense,<sup>9</sup> gave their opinion that the king should push forward into France; for he could there find plenty of forage, and a great supply of<sup>10</sup> provision. This counsel was followed;<sup>11</sup> and all the lords were ordered to dislodge<sup>12</sup> and pack up their baggage.<sup>13</sup>—*Froissart.*

## EXERCISE LXXXIV

Having now been at Panama full three weeks, Captain Morgan commanded all things to be prepared<sup>14</sup> for his departure.<sup>15</sup> He ordered every company<sup>16</sup> of men to seek so many<sup>17</sup> beasts of carriage as might convey<sup>17</sup> the spoil<sup>18</sup> to the river where his canoes lay. About this time there was a rumor<sup>19</sup> that a considerable number of pirates<sup>20</sup> intended to leave Captain Morgan: and that taking a ship then in the port<sup>21</sup> they had determined<sup>22</sup> to go and rob<sup>23</sup> on the South Seas<sup>23</sup> until they had got as much as<sup>24</sup> they thought<sup>25</sup> fit and then return home.—*Pyle.*

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 6. 5.   <sup>2</sup> § 46.   <sup>3</sup> III. 4. 41.   <sup>4</sup> A causal clause.   <sup>5</sup> Full of.   <sup>6</sup> Missiles (III. 3. 16).   <sup>7</sup> I. 7. 6.   <sup>8</sup> χειμ.   <sup>9</sup> Being there, they were spending (I. 1. 8) much money.   <sup>10</sup> Abundant.   <sup>11</sup> He did what they advised.   <sup>12</sup> Break camp; Word-list 5.   <sup>13</sup> Pack . . . baggage; Word-list 3.

<sup>14</sup> Active voice (II. 6. 8).   <sup>15</sup> § 9.   <sup>16</sup> Word-list 2.   <sup>17</sup> Sufficient to convey (III. 2. 26).   <sup>18</sup> λεία.   <sup>19</sup> I. 4. 7.   <sup>20</sup> ληστές.   <sup>21</sup> λιμὴν.   <sup>22</sup> II. 4. 17.   <sup>23</sup> IV. 8. 22.   <sup>24</sup> § 100.   <sup>25</sup> § 103.

## EXERCISE LXXXV

Toward evening<sup>1</sup> they mounted<sup>2</sup> their horses, and riding all night, came about the dawn before a large town, which had but lately surrendered<sup>3</sup> to the English. A spy<sup>4</sup> came to the commander and informed him that in the town there were six score men-at-arms, Gascons and English, and three hundred archers, who would defend<sup>5</sup> themselves well, if they were attacked:<sup>6</sup> "but," added the spy, "I have observed that their cattle<sup>7</sup> are without the town; and in the meadow<sup>8</sup> underneath it are two hundred large beasts feeding."<sup>9</sup> The commander then addressed himself to his companions, and said: "Gentlemen,<sup>10</sup> I will go with sixty men to collect the booty,<sup>11</sup> which I will drive this way;<sup>12</sup> and I am mistaken<sup>13</sup> if the English do not sally out, thinking to rescue<sup>14</sup> them, which will throw them into your power."<sup>15</sup> This was executed.—*Froissart*.

## EXERCISE LXXXVI

When at length<sup>16</sup> the woman had done<sup>17</sup> speaking he summoned the captain of the regiment that stood round.<sup>18</sup> He was a great man named Taku: and<sup>19</sup> he also<sup>19</sup> summoned certain men who do the king's bidding.<sup>20</sup> To the captain of the impi he spoke sharply, saying: "Take three companies and guides and come by night to the town of the people of the Axe that is by the Ghost<sup>21</sup> Mountain and

<sup>1</sup> Toward evening; Word-list 33. <sup>2</sup> I. 8. 3. <sup>3</sup> Had been handed over. <sup>4</sup> II. 2. 15. <sup>5</sup> II. 3. 23. <sup>6</sup> If any one should attack. <sup>7</sup> II. 1. 6. <sup>8</sup> Λειμών. <sup>9</sup> II. 2. 15. <sup>10</sup> I. 3. 8. <sup>11</sup> Cattle. <sup>12</sup> I. 10. 6. <sup>13</sup> If I am not mistaken (I. 8. 11) the enemy will, etc. <sup>14</sup> I. 2. 27, § 151. <sup>15</sup> And thus get into our power (III. 1. 13).

<sup>16</sup> § 194. <sup>17</sup> § 163. <sup>18</sup> IV. 7. 2. <sup>19</sup> § 180 (b). <sup>20</sup> Who do the things ordered (παραγγέλλω) by the king. <sup>21</sup> Omit.

burn it and slay all the wizards<sup>1</sup> who sleep<sup>2</sup> therein. Most of all<sup>3</sup> slay the chief of the people who is named the Slaughterer. Kill him by torture<sup>4</sup> if you may, but bring his head to me. Take that wife of his, who is known as Nada,<sup>5</sup> the Lily,<sup>5</sup> alive, if you can, and bring her to me, for I would cause her to be slain<sup>6</sup> here. Bring the cattle also. Now go swiftly: if ye return having failed in one jot of my command<sup>7</sup> ye die every one of you slowly.” The captain saluted<sup>8</sup> and departed with his company.<sup>9</sup>—*Rider Haggard.*

## EXERCISE LXXXVII

The Lord Lewis of Spain kept cruising between<sup>10</sup> England and Brittany, and did great mischief<sup>11</sup> to the English, who were coming to recruit<sup>12</sup> their countrymen with<sup>13</sup> troops and provisions. Once, among other times,<sup>14</sup> they attacked the fleet of the king of England that lay at anchor<sup>15</sup> in a small port at Brittany which was not sufficiently guarded, they slew a great part of the mariners,<sup>16</sup> and would have done much more damage if the English had not hastened<sup>17</sup> to their assistance.<sup>18</sup> When this news was brought to the army every one was in motion:<sup>19</sup> but notwithstanding the speed they made<sup>20</sup> they could not prevent<sup>21</sup> Lord Lewis and his party from carrying off four vessels laden with<sup>22</sup> provisions and sinking<sup>23</sup> three others,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Evil-doers* (I. 9. 13).    <sup>2</sup> *Dwell*.    <sup>3</sup> *Most of all* (I. 9. 22).  
<sup>4</sup> III. 1. 18, § 152.    <sup>5</sup> I. 10. 2.    <sup>6</sup> *I wish to slay*.    <sup>7</sup> *Having neglected*  
(I. 3. 11) *even one of the things commanded by me*.    <sup>8</sup> I. 6. 10.  
<sup>9</sup> § 8.

<sup>10</sup> *Continued* (§ 163) *to sail between* (II. 2. 3).    <sup>11</sup> II. 5. 5.  
<sup>12</sup> I. 1. 9.    <sup>13</sup> *Participle*.    <sup>14</sup> *Once . . . times* (I. 5. 7).    <sup>15</sup> *Word-*  
*list* 31.    <sup>16</sup> *ναύταις*.    <sup>17</sup> I. 3. 14.    <sup>18</sup> *To assist* (IV. 7. 24).    <sup>19</sup> *The*  
*whole army set out*.    <sup>20</sup> *Although they hastened*.    <sup>21</sup> II. 5. 7.  
<sup>22</sup> *Full of*.    <sup>23</sup> I. 3. 17.

the crews of which were all drowned.<sup>1</sup> The king then sent one part of his fleet to the harbor<sup>2</sup> of Brest and the other to that of Hennebon and continued to besiege Vannes.—*Froissart*.

### EXERCISE LXXXVIII

The king of England laid siege to Dinant, and when he had been four days before it, collected a great number of boats, in which he placed his archers, who rowed<sup>3</sup> up to the palisades<sup>4</sup> of wood with which the town was inclosed.<sup>5</sup> They shot so well<sup>6</sup> that no one dared<sup>7</sup> show himself<sup>8</sup> to defend it. With the archers there were others who with sharp axes,<sup>9</sup> while the archers made use of their bows, cut the palisades, and in a short time did so much damage<sup>10</sup> that they flung down<sup>11</sup> a large part of them and entered the town by force.<sup>12</sup> The towns-people fled toward the market-place, but there was little regularity<sup>13</sup> among them, for those who had passed the ditch<sup>14</sup> in boats, and had entered the town, advanced to the gate and opened<sup>15</sup> it, so that every one might pass. Thus was the town of Dinant in<sup>16</sup> Brittany taken, sacked<sup>17</sup> and pillaged and the governor made prisoner.<sup>18</sup> The English made a rich<sup>19</sup> booty, for the town at that time was very wealthy and full of merchandise.<sup>20</sup>—*Froissart*.

---

<sup>1</sup> πνύω (pass.). <sup>2</sup> Page 195, note 21.

<sup>3</sup> Advanced by rowing (κώπαις). <sup>4</sup> Word-list 14. <sup>5</sup> Which were around the town. <sup>6</sup> ἀκριβῶς. <sup>7</sup> II. 2. 12. <sup>8</sup> Appear (II. 4. 24).

<sup>9</sup> I. 5. 12. <sup>10</sup> Injured (II. 5. 17) them so (much). <sup>11</sup> Flung down (II. 4. 22). <sup>12</sup> Page 190, note 4. <sup>13</sup> Were in disorder (I. 7. 20).

<sup>14</sup> I. 7. 16. <sup>15</sup> Word-list 14. <sup>16</sup> § 2. <sup>17</sup> πορθεῖν. <sup>18</sup> Taken alive.

<sup>19</sup> Worth much. <sup>20</sup> I. 2. 18.

## EXERCISE LXXXIX

Next morning at daybreak<sup>1</sup> they came with their ships ashore<sup>2</sup> and landed<sup>3</sup> their men, though the Spaniards made good resistance<sup>4</sup> from a fort they had raised<sup>5</sup> on that side, where of necessity they were to land;<sup>6</sup> but they were forced<sup>7</sup> to retire to a village, whither the pirates followed them. Here the Spaniards rallying<sup>8</sup> fell upon them with great fury<sup>9</sup> and maintained a strong combat which lasted till nightfall;<sup>10</sup> but then perceiving they had lost<sup>11</sup> a great number of men, they retired to secret places<sup>12</sup> in the woods. Next day the pirates seeing them all fled, and the town left empty of people,<sup>13</sup> pursued them as far as they could<sup>14</sup> and overtook<sup>15</sup> a party of Spaniards whom they made prisoners.<sup>16</sup>—*Pyle*.

## EXERCISE XC

Sir Walter alighted<sup>17</sup> with some of his companions and, having passed the wicket<sup>18</sup> in silence,<sup>19</sup> he then marched down the street<sup>20</sup> to the great tower, but the gate was close shut.<sup>21</sup> The watch of the castle heard their voices<sup>22</sup> and began to blow his horn.<sup>23</sup> This awakened<sup>24</sup> the soldiers, but they did not make any sally from the fort. Sir

---

<sup>1</sup> Word-list 33. <sup>2</sup> *Brought their ships to land* (κατέγω). <sup>3</sup> Word-list 31. <sup>4</sup> Page 190, note 9. <sup>5</sup> I. 2. 9. <sup>6</sup> *It was necessary for them to land* (ἀποβαίνω). <sup>7</sup> III. 3. 12. <sup>8</sup> Word-list 4. <sup>9</sup> *With great fury*; use an adverb. <sup>10</sup> *And continued fighting bravely till night*. <sup>11</sup> IV. 6. 10. <sup>12</sup> *Secret places* (IV. 1. 7). <sup>13</sup> *Empty of people* (III. 4. 10). <sup>14</sup> *As . . . could* (III. 3. 15). <sup>15</sup> II. 2. 12. <sup>16</sup> Page 198, note 18.

<sup>17</sup> *Leaping* (I. 8. 3) *from his horse*. <sup>18</sup> πύλις. <sup>19</sup> I. 8. 11. <sup>20</sup> *Road*. <sup>21</sup> *Close shut* (συγκλείω). <sup>22</sup> II. 6. 9. <sup>23</sup> *Blow his horn* (II. 2. 4). <sup>24</sup> The same word means *to keep watch* in IV. 6. 22.



Walter, upon this,<sup>1</sup> ordered those houses to be set on fire<sup>2</sup> that were near the castle: full fifty houses were burned that morning, and the inhabitants much<sup>3</sup> frightened. Thence Sir Walter and his company marched towards Bouchain and managed matters so well with<sup>4</sup> the governor that the gates of the castle were opened<sup>5</sup> to them: they crossed a river which empties itself<sup>6</sup> into the Scheldt and which rises in Arleux. Afterwards they came to a very strong castle, called Thin l' Évêque, that belonged to the bishop of Cambrai, which was so suddenly surprised<sup>7</sup> the governor and his wife were taken in it. —*Froissart*.

## EXERCISE XCI

About midnight they came to a place called Estera Longa Lemos, where they all went on shore and marched by land<sup>8</sup> to the first outposts<sup>9</sup> of the city. They had in their company<sup>10</sup> an Englishman, formerly a prisoner<sup>11</sup> in those parts, who now served them for a guide.<sup>12</sup> To him and three or four more<sup>13</sup> they gave commission<sup>14</sup> to take the sentinel if possible,<sup>15</sup> or kill him on the place,<sup>16</sup> but they seized him so cunningly<sup>17</sup> that he had no time to give warning<sup>18</sup> or make any noise<sup>19</sup> and brought him with his hands bound<sup>20</sup> to Captain Morgan, who asked him how

<sup>1</sup> I. 10. 1.    <sup>2</sup> To . . . fire, active voice of *ἐνέτω*.    <sup>3</sup> Express by *ἐκ* in composition (I. 5. 13).    <sup>4</sup> Managed . . . with (II. 3. 25)  
<sup>5</sup> Page 198, note 15.    <sup>6</sup> Empties itself; Word-list 30.    <sup>7</sup> Attacked unexpectedly; Word-list 4.

<sup>8</sup> I. 4. 18.    <sup>9</sup> II. 3. 2.    <sup>10</sup> There was with them.    <sup>11</sup> III. 3. 19.  
<sup>12</sup> Served . . . guide (IV. 6. 2).    <sup>13</sup> I. 8. 12.    <sup>14</sup> Ordered.    <sup>15</sup> If possible, *μάλιστα*.    <sup>16</sup> Where he was.    <sup>17</sup> *σοφῶς*.    <sup>18</sup> IV. 3. 32.  
<sup>19</sup> Make any noise (IV. 5. 18).    <sup>20</sup> Bound (III. 4. 35) as to his two hands (§ 31).

things went<sup>1</sup> in the city and what forces they had. Then they advanced to the city, carrying the sentinel with them bound. Having marched about<sup>2</sup> a quarter of a league<sup>3</sup> they came to the castle near the city, which presently they closely surrounded,<sup>4</sup> so that no person could get either<sup>5</sup> in or out.—*Pyle*.

## EXERCISE XCII

On that day then,<sup>6</sup> Umslopagaas began his march<sup>7</sup> to the kraal where Dingaan sat.<sup>8</sup> But before he set his face homewards in the presence of the soldiers<sup>9</sup> he asked Galazi if he would come back with him, or if he desired to stay to be chief<sup>10</sup> of the Halakazi. Then Galazi laughed<sup>11</sup> and answered that he had come out to seek for vengeance<sup>12</sup> and not for the place of a chief,<sup>13</sup> also that there were few of the Halakazi people left whom he might<sup>14</sup> rule if he wished. So Umslopagaas said no more<sup>15</sup> about the chieftainship<sup>16</sup> but began his journey. With him he brought a great number of cattle, to be a gift<sup>17</sup> for Dingaan and a multitude of captives,<sup>18</sup> for he would appease<sup>19</sup> Dingaan, because he did not bring her whom he sought.<sup>20</sup>—*Rider Haggard*.

## EXERCISE XCIII

About four thousand Moslems<sup>21</sup> began ascending the hills towards the insurgent positions,<sup>22</sup> and no effort was

<sup>1</sup> *What they were doing.* <sup>2</sup> I. 8. 6. <sup>3</sup> Page 194, note 13

<sup>4</sup> *Closely surrounded,* page 194, note 16. <sup>5</sup> § 173.

<sup>6</sup> § 186. <sup>7</sup> *Set out* (I. 1. 9). <sup>8</sup> I. 3. 12. <sup>9</sup> § 148. <sup>10</sup> *To rule* (I. 1. 8). <sup>11</sup> Word-list 9. <sup>12</sup> I. 3. 4. <sup>13</sup> *The . . . chief* (I. 1. 4).

<sup>14</sup> § 107. <sup>15</sup> ἄλλος. <sup>16</sup> I. 1. 3. <sup>17</sup> *To be a gift* (II. 1. 10). <sup>18</sup> IV. 8. 27.

<sup>19</sup> καταπραΐνω. <sup>20</sup> II. 3. 2.

<sup>21</sup> *Persians.* <sup>22</sup> *Where the Greeks were encamped.*

made to stop<sup>1</sup> them. Two thousand of them were armed, but the others were without weapons.<sup>2</sup> The unarmed Moslems were driving donkeys<sup>3</sup> and carrying baskets.<sup>4</sup> A story had been circulated<sup>5</sup> that the admirals were going<sup>6</sup> to allow<sup>7</sup> the insurgents to remove inland,<sup>8</sup> and the Moslems intended to pillage their houses as soon as they had gone. The insurgent fighting force at Akrotiri numbered<sup>9</sup> only seven hundred men. When the Moslems were within two hundred yards<sup>10</sup> of the insurgent lines a parley was held<sup>11</sup> by the leaders. What passed between them is not known.<sup>12</sup> Suddenly along both lines<sup>13</sup> there were almost constant volleys. At first the insurgents had the advantage, and drove the Moslems down the hills. The latter rallied, and making a fierce charge, drove the Christians from their forward posts<sup>14</sup> where a Turkish flag was planted.<sup>15</sup>—*The London Daily News*, 1897.

### EXERCISE XCIV

Having landed,<sup>16</sup> they marched into the country,<sup>17</sup> where they found large quantities of cattle;<sup>18</sup> such as<sup>19</sup> cows, horses and wild boars;<sup>20</sup> but finding no great profit in these animals<sup>21</sup> unless they could inclose<sup>22</sup> them, and

<sup>1</sup> No . . . stop; cf. page 191, note 10. <sup>2</sup> Use an adjective.

<sup>3</sup> II. 1. 6. <sup>4</sup> *καροὺν*. <sup>5</sup> Story . . . circulated (I. 4. 7). <sup>6</sup> I. 8. 1.

<sup>7</sup> Page 183, note 10. <sup>8</sup> I. 2. 1. <sup>9</sup> Amounted to; page 190, note 13. <sup>10</sup> Were distant (I. 3. 20) about a stadium. <sup>11</sup> Parley was held; cf. Word-list 6. <sup>12</sup> No one knows what they said. <sup>13</sup> Both

sides (I. 5. 17) shot, etc. <sup>14</sup> Put to flight (I. 8. 24) the outposts. <sup>15</sup> There they planted (IV. 6. 27) a royal standard (I. 10. 12).

<sup>16</sup> *ἀποβαλὼν*. <sup>17</sup> Into the country (I. 2. 1). <sup>18</sup> III. 1. 19.

<sup>19</sup> Such as (IV. 1. 14). <sup>20</sup> II. 2. 9. <sup>21</sup> When they knew that these were of no use (I. 3. 11). <sup>22</sup> III. 1. 12.

knowing likewise the island to be pretty well peopled by the Spaniards,<sup>1</sup> they thought it convenient<sup>2</sup> to enter upon and seize<sup>3</sup> the island of Tortuga. This they performed without any difficulty, there being upon the island no more than ten or twelve Spaniards to guard it. These few<sup>4</sup> men let the French come in and possess the island for six months without any trouble;<sup>5</sup> meanwhile<sup>6</sup> they passed and repassed<sup>7</sup> with their canoes to Hispaniola, from whence they transported<sup>8</sup> many people, and at last began to plant<sup>9</sup> the whole island of Tortuga.—*Pyle*.

## EXERCISE XCV

So Umslopagaas told the king all the tale which he had made ready<sup>10</sup> against his wrath<sup>11</sup>, and when he had finished<sup>12</sup> Galazi told his story of how<sup>13</sup> he had seen the soldier kill the maid<sup>14</sup> and in his wrath<sup>15</sup> had killed the soldier. Then certain of the captains who had seen the soldier and the maid lying dead together<sup>16</sup> came forward<sup>17</sup> and told about it.<sup>18</sup> Now the king was very angry, yet there was nothing to be done. The maid was dead and by no fault<sup>19</sup> of any except<sup>20</sup> of one who was also dead and beyond his reach.<sup>21</sup> "Get you hence, you and your people," he said to the Wolf-Brethren. "I take the captives. Be

---

<sup>1</sup> *Many Persians dwelt in the island* (II. 4. 22). <sup>2</sup> *It seemed good*, etc. <sup>3</sup> I. 4. 8. <sup>4</sup> *Being few*. <sup>5</sup> I. 1. 11. <sup>6</sup> I. 2. 20. <sup>7</sup> *Sailed past* (Word-list 31) *often*. <sup>8</sup> IV. 5. 22. <sup>9</sup> *κατοικίω*.

<sup>10</sup> *Told the king everything which it seemed good to him to tell*. <sup>11</sup> *To appease him*; cf. page 201, note 19. <sup>12</sup> I. 2. 2. <sup>13</sup> *His story of how=that*. <sup>14</sup> IV. 5. 9. <sup>15</sup> *Participle*. <sup>16</sup> *Lying dead* (I. 8. 27) *near each other*. <sup>17</sup> *Stood up*. <sup>18</sup> *These things*; cf. § 23. <sup>19</sup> *No one was to blame* (II. 5. 22). <sup>20</sup> I. 1. 6. <sup>21</sup> *No longer in his power* (I. 1. 4).

thankful<sup>1</sup> that I do not take<sup>2</sup> all your lives<sup>2</sup> also—first<sup>3</sup> because ye have dared to make war without my knowledge,<sup>4</sup> and secondly,<sup>3</sup> because, having made war, ye have so brought it about<sup>5</sup> that, though ye bring me the body of her I sought, ye do not bring the life.”—*Rider Haggard*.

## EXERCISE XCVI

As soon as Captain Morgan came near the island with his fleet<sup>7</sup> he sent one of his best sailing<sup>8</sup> vessels to see<sup>9</sup> if any other ships were there, which might hinder<sup>10</sup> him from landing; for he feared lest they might give intelligence of his arrival<sup>11</sup> to the inhabitants. Next day, before sunrise,<sup>12</sup> all the fleet anchored<sup>13</sup> near the island in a bay<sup>14</sup> called Agua de Grande. On this bay the Spaniards had built a fort. Captain Morgan landed about a thousand men in diverse squadrons,<sup>15</sup> who marched through the woods, though they had no other guide than<sup>16</sup> a few of his own men, who had been there before under<sup>17</sup> Mansfeldt. The same day they came to a place where the governor sometimes resided. Here they found a fort, but nobody in it,<sup>18</sup> the Spaniards having retired to the lesser island, which, as we have said before,<sup>19</sup> is so near the great one that a short bridge only<sup>20</sup> may conjoin<sup>21</sup> them.—*Pyle*.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. 4. 15.    <sup>2</sup> II. 1. 12.    <sup>3</sup> § 196.    <sup>4</sup> *Without my knowledge* (I. 3. 8).    <sup>5</sup> *Have . . . about* (I. 6. 2).    <sup>6</sup> III. 2. 20.

<sup>7</sup> τὸ ναυτικόν.    <sup>8</sup> *Swiftest*.    <sup>9</sup> II. 4. 24.    <sup>10</sup> II. 5. 7.    <sup>11</sup> *Announce that he* (§ 132) *had arrived*.    <sup>12</sup> I. 7. 2.    <sup>13</sup> III. 5. 10.    <sup>14</sup> κόλπος τῆς θαλάττης.

<sup>15</sup> *In . . . squadrons, κατ' ὀλίγους*.    <sup>16</sup> I. 2. 24.

<sup>17</sup> *With*.    <sup>18</sup> *Unoccupied* (III. 4. 10).    <sup>19</sup> II. 1. 1.    <sup>20</sup> *Even*.

<sup>21</sup> I. 2. 5.

## EXERCISE XCVII

As God hears me,<sup>1</sup> I knew not who this woman was; but last night Vlacho bade me come with him to the cottage<sup>2</sup> on the hill, and if he called<sup>3</sup> me I was to come<sup>4</sup> and help<sup>5</sup> him to carry her to the house of my Lord<sup>6</sup> Constantine. He called, and I, coming with Kortés, found Vlacho dead. Kortés, however, would not<sup>7</sup> suffer<sup>8</sup> me to touch<sup>9</sup> the lady, but bade me stay with Vlacho. But when Kortés was gone<sup>10</sup> I ran and told my lord<sup>11</sup> what had happened.<sup>12</sup> And my lord was greatly disturbed<sup>13</sup> and bade me come with him, and we came together to the town and went to the Guardhouse.<sup>14</sup> There Kortés watched,<sup>15</sup> and my lord asked him whom he held prisoner;<sup>16</sup> and when he heard it was the Englishman he sought<sup>17</sup> to prevail on<sup>18</sup> Kortés to deliver him up; but Kortés would not without<sup>19</sup> the command of the Lady<sup>6</sup> Euphrosyne. Then my lord said: "And have you no other prisoner, Kortés?" Kortés answered: "There is a woman here whom we found in the cottage; but you gave me no orders<sup>20</sup> concerning her, my lord, neither you nor the Lady of the Island." "I care<sup>21</sup> nothing about her," said my lord, and turned away.—*Anthony Hope.*

## EXERCISE XCVIII

After the main body<sup>22</sup> of Greek troops had returned to Platania from Voukoulis news arrived<sup>23</sup> that five hundred

---

<sup>1</sup> As . . . me (I. 6. 6). <sup>2</sup> οἰκίδιον. <sup>3</sup> I. 2. 2. <sup>4</sup> Recast: and (bade me) to come if, etc. <sup>5</sup> Express by a prep. in composition with ἀποφέρω. <sup>6</sup> Omit. <sup>7</sup> Refused (§ 128). <sup>8</sup> Allow. <sup>9</sup> § 39. <sup>10</sup> § 49. <sup>11</sup> Use the proper name; cf. § 203. <sup>12</sup> § 7. <sup>13</sup> Word-list 9. <sup>14</sup> δεσμοτήριον. <sup>15</sup> Word-list 14. <sup>16</sup> Perf. partic. pass. of δέω (bind). <sup>17</sup> I. 1. 7. <sup>18</sup> Persuade. <sup>19</sup> § 159. <sup>20</sup> Told me nothing before (I. 2. 17). <sup>21</sup> I. 4. 16.

<sup>22</sup> I. 4. 13. <sup>23</sup> A messenger announced.

Turks were attempting to advance from Canea, and that they were held in check<sup>1</sup> in a defile<sup>2</sup> by a force of two hundred Cretans. Colonel Vassos sent a battalion of infantry and a company of chasseurs<sup>3</sup> to assist the Cretans. The country was difficult to traverse, being heavily wooded, but the Greeks managed<sup>4</sup> to get through. The Turks, when they learned of the approach of reinforcements,<sup>5</sup> took positions<sup>6</sup> on the heights, and for three hours made a desperate defence.<sup>7</sup> The Greek troops were all young men who had never seen service,<sup>8</sup> but they fought with admirable courage.<sup>9</sup> They drove the Turks from one position to another<sup>10</sup> and captured the towers of Ayah and Monkundra, which they burned. The Moslems retreated. The Greeks pursued them to within a mile of<sup>11</sup> Canea, and then retired to Platania. The Turkish loss is unknown,<sup>12</sup> but numbers of<sup>13</sup> wounded were taken to Canea. The Greeks suffered severely.<sup>14</sup> Three officers were killed and one officer was wounded.—*The London Daily News*.

### EXERCISE XCIX

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent<sup>15</sup>: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter<sup>16</sup> montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur;<sup>17</sup> mons autem altissimus inpendebat,<sup>18</sup> ut facile

---

<sup>1</sup> ἀναστῆλλω. <sup>2</sup> In a certain defile (IV. 1. 14). <sup>3</sup> Squadron of cavalry (I. 2. 16). <sup>4</sup> Got through (I. 5. 7) with difficulty (III. 3. 13). <sup>5</sup> That the Greeks were coming with assistance (II. 3. 19). <sup>6</sup> I. 7. 9. <sup>7</sup> Very bravely defended themselves; page 196, note 5. <sup>8</sup> Seen service (I. 7. 12). <sup>9</sup> With . . . courage, θαυμασίως ὡς ἀνδρείως. <sup>10</sup> I. 5. 12. <sup>11</sup> Until (I. 7. 6) they were a mile distant from; page 194, note 13. <sup>12</sup> § 144. <sup>13</sup> Many. <sup>14</sup> III. 3. 7.

<sup>15</sup> Erant . . . possent, the roads leading (IV. 3. 5) from home (IV. 8. 25) were altogether (I. 2. 9). <sup>16</sup> I. 7. 15. <sup>17</sup> Vix . . . ducerentur, difficult to traverse (I. 5. 7) for even (καί) one wagon. <sup>18</sup> IV. 1. 2.

perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius;<sup>1</sup> propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur.<sup>2</sup> Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus<sup>3</sup> Geneva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.<sup>4</sup> Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur,<sup>5</sup> existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis<sup>6</sup> diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant.<sup>7</sup>—*Caesar.*

## EXERCISE C

Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis<sup>8</sup> esset natura montis et qualis ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia<sup>9</sup> T. Labienum, legatum, cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum<sup>10</sup> montis ascendere iubet, quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia<sup>11</sup> eodem itinere, quo<sup>12</sup> hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur<sup>13</sup> et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.—*Caesar.*

<sup>1</sup> *ταχύς*. <sup>2</sup> *Is fordable*. <sup>3</sup> *Extremum . . . finibus* (I. 2. 10).

<sup>4</sup> *It was possible to cross by (ἐπὶ, gen.) a bridge*. <sup>5</sup> § 135. <sup>6</sup> Page 195, notes 14, 15. <sup>7</sup> *They appointed* (IV. 2. 2) *a day on which it would be necessary for all to assemble at* (I. 1. 2) *the bank* (IV. 3. 3).

<sup>8</sup> § 144. <sup>9</sup> *About midnight*. <sup>10</sup> III. 4. 41. <sup>11</sup> IV. 1. 5.

<sup>12</sup> I. 10. 6. <sup>13</sup> *Qui . . . habebatur* (I. 6. 1).



## EXERCISE CI

Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso<sup>1</sup> ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri: id se a<sup>2</sup> Gallicis armis cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum<sup>3</sup> collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique<sup>4</sup> uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die<sup>5</sup> per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum quod non vidisset<sup>6</sup> pro viso sibi renuntiassse.—*Caesar*.

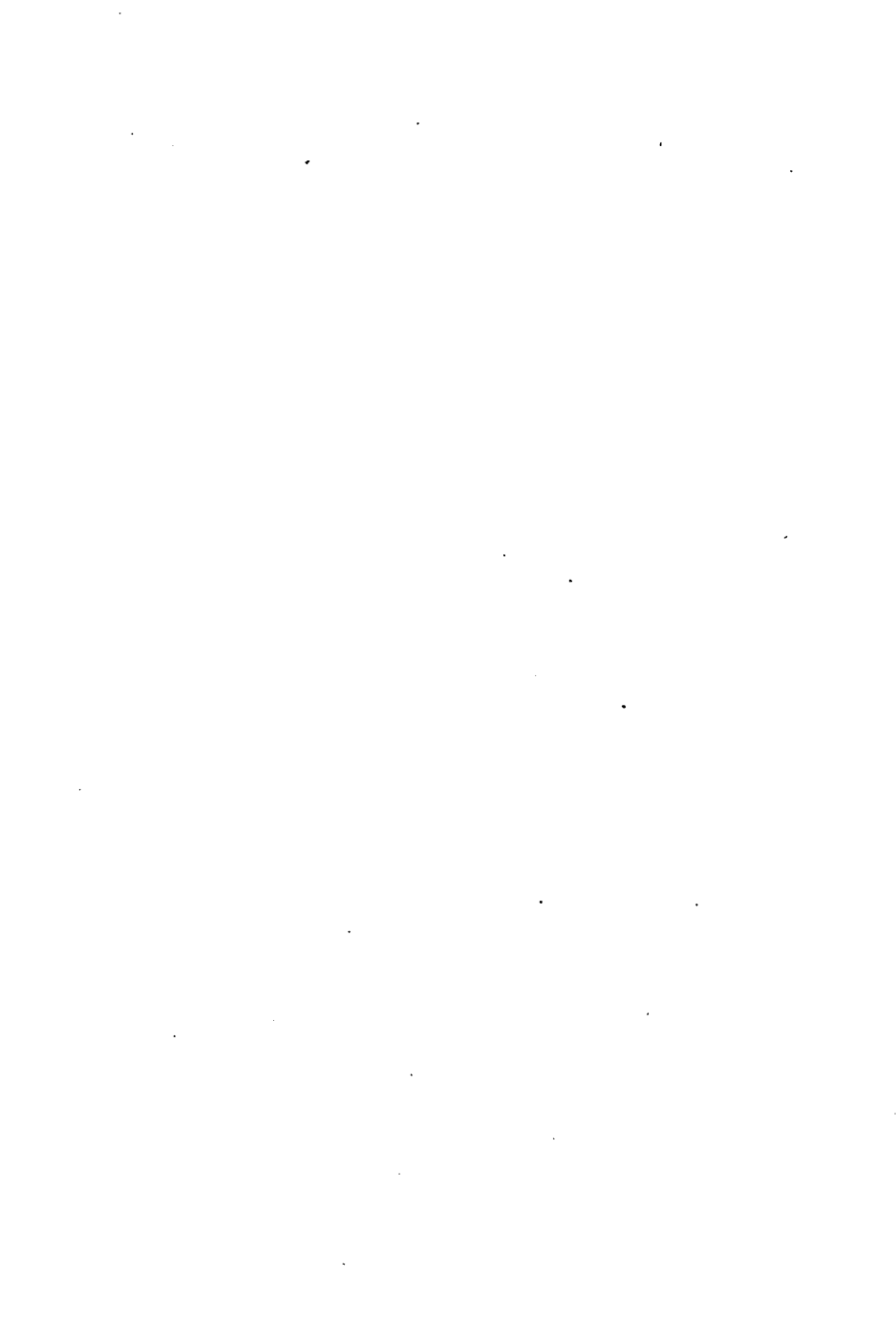
---

<sup>1</sup> I. 8. 1.    <sup>2</sup> ἐκ.    <sup>3</sup> II. 2. 16.    <sup>4</sup> III. 1. 12.    <sup>5</sup> *Multo die* (II. 2. 14).  
<sup>6</sup> *Quod . . . viso* (IV. 4. 15).

## **PART III**

### **CLASSIFIED LISTS OF WORDS AND PHRASES FROM ANABASIS I-VII**

**To be used in connection with the Supplementary Exercises.**



## LISTS OF WORDS AND PHRASES

1. Arms	13. Food Supplies	27. Passes and Roads
2. Army, divisions of	14. Fortifications	28. Peace
3. Baggage	15. Friendship	29. Plunder
4. Battles	16. Geographical Terms	30. Rivers
5. Camps	17. Government	31. Ships
6. Councils	18. Guards	32. Signals and Commands
7. Defeats and Reverses	19. Losses	33. Time
8. Difficulties and Dangers	20. Marches	34. Trial and Punishment
9. Emotions	21. Missiles	35. Troops, classes of
10. Enmity	22. Money and Pay	36. Troops, man- oeuvres of
11. Fire	23. Mountains	37. Victory
12. Flight and Pur- suit	24. Nautical Terms	38. War
	25. Officers	39. Weather
	26. Operations, military	

### 1. ARMS

Armed with, ὀπλισμένος (dat.)

Unarmed, ἀοπλος

Well armed, εὖοπλος

Under arms, ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ

Assembled under arms, συνειλεγμένοι ἐν ὄπλοις

Arm, ἐξοπλίζομαι

Present arms, προβάλλομαι τὰ ὅπλα

Halt under arms in battle array, ἐν τάξει τὰ ὅπλα  
τίθεμαι

Order under arms, εἰς ὅπλα παραγγέλλω

Ground arms, ὅπλα τίθεμαι

Rush to arms, εἰς ὅπλα τρεχω

Surrender arms, τὰ ὄπλα παραδίδωμι  
 Throw away arms, τὰ ὄπλα ἐκβάλλω  
 Draw a sword, σπάω ξίφος

## 2. ARMY DIVISIONS

Right, τὸ δεξιόν  
 Left, τὸ εὐώνυμον  
 Center, τὸ μέσον  
 Van, τὸ στόμα  
 Rear, ἡ οὐρά  
 Those in front, οἱ ἔμπροσθεν  
 In the van, ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι  
 Those behind, οἱ ὀπισθεν  
 Rear rank, ἡ τελευταία τάξις  
 Rear guard, ὀπισθοφύλακες  
 On both wings, ἐπὶ τῶν πλευρῶν ἐκατέρων  
 Main body, τὸ πολὺ  
 Whole line, ὅλη ἡ φάλαγξ  
 Compact body, τὸ στῖφος  
 Phalanx in close array, φάλαγξ πυκνή  
 Crescent-shaped line, μηνοειδῆς τάξις  
 Companies of one hundred each, λόχοι ἀνὰ ἑκατόν  
 With companies in column, ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις  
 Squadrons and companies, ἱλαὶ καὶ τάξεις  
 In solid column, ἐν πλαίσιῳ πλήρει

## 3. BAGGAGE

Baggage, τὰ σκεύη  
 Porters, οἱ σκευοφόροι  
 Carry baggage, σκευοφορέω<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>The verbs are given in the uncontracted form; but the pupil will always contract them in writing, except in the case of words which, if contracted, would be monosyllables; e.g., ποιῶ, but δέω.

Pack up baggage, συσκευάζομαι

Bring up the baggage-train, τὰ σκευοφόρα ἄγω

Load the pack-animals, ἀνατίθημι ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια

#### 4. BATTLES

Join battle, μάχην συνάπτω (dat.)

Risk a battle, διακινδυνεύω

Order the battle, μάχην ποιέω

Be present at the battle, παραγίγνομαι ἐν τῇ μάχῃ

Take one's place in a battle, εἰς μάχην καθίσταμαι

Be late for battle, ὕστερέω τῆς μάχης

Prepared for battle, εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος

Fight with, μάχομαι (dat.)

Fight it out with, διαπολεμέω (dat.)

Contend with, ἀγωνίζομαι (πρός with acc.)

Close with, συμμείγνυμι (dat.)

Come to close quarters, εἰς χεῖρας εἶμι, ὁμόσε χωρέω

Charge, ἐλαύνω ἀντίος (dat.)

Attack, εἰσπίπτω (dat.), ἐπικίμαι (dat.), ἐπιτίθεμαι (dat.)

Attack unexpectedly, λανθάνω ἐπιπίπτων (dat.)

Surround, κυκλώω

Get on both sides, γίγνομαι ἀμφοτέρωθεν (gen.)

Skirmish with, ἀκροβολίζομαι (dat.)

In the skirmish, ἐν τῇ ἀκροβολίσσει

Make a stand, ἵσταμαι

Rally, ἀναστρέφομαι (pass.)

Go to meet, ἀπαντάω (dat.)

Advance, ἔπειμι

Receive (the enemy), δέχομαι

Await, ὑπομένω

Defend oneself, ἀμύνομαι

Resist, ἀλέξομαι

Check, ἀναστέλλω

Repel, ἀλέξομαι  
 Gull or annoy, ἀνιάω, λυπέω  
 Break through, διακόπτω  
 Dislodge, ἀπελαύνω (ἀπό with gen.)  
 Cut off, ἀποκλείω (gen. of place)  
 Cut to pieces, κατακόπτω  
 Press hard, πιέζω

## 5. CAMPS

Station (stopping-place), σταθμός  
 Quarters, σκηνώματα  
 Tent companions, σύσκηνοι  
 Encamp, στρατοπεδεύω (usually in mid.)  
 Be encamped, κάθημαι  
 Tent (be quartered), σκηνέω  
 Encamp up and down the plain, στρατοπεδεύομαι ἀνὰ τὸ πεδῖον  
 Lie in the open air, ἀνλίζομαι  
 Pass the night (bivouac), νυκτερεύω  
 Sleep, καθεύδω  
 Break camp, ἀναζεύγνυμι  
 Move camp, κινέω στρατόπεδον  
 Break into a camp, εἰσπίπτω εἰς στρατόπεδον

## 6. COUNCILS

Take counsel with, βουλευόμαι (σύν with dat.)  
 Hold an assembly, ἐκκλησίαν ποιέω  
 Assemble (trans.), συνάγω, συγκαλέω  
 Assemble (intr.), συνέρχομαι  
 Summon as counselor, σύμβουλον παρακαλέω  
 Hold a conference with, εἰς λόγους εἶμι (dat.)  
 Advise, συμβουλεύω (cf. I. 6. 9; II. 1. 17-18; II. 3. 20)  
 Propose, εἶπον (infin., or acc. and infin.; I. 3. 14)  
 Exhort, παρακελεύομαι (dat. and infin.)

Speak in opposition, ἀντιλέγω

Express an opinion, γνώμην ἀποδείκνυμαι (ὅτι or infin.)

Agree with an opinion, γνώμῃ προστίθεμαι

He decided, ἐδόκει αὐτῷ (infin.)

All decided on this course, συνεδόκει ταῦτα πᾶσιν

Having resolved on this course, δόξαν ταῦτα (IV. 1. 13)

After deliberation they decided, βουλευομένοις ἔδοξεν

Arrange to, συντίθεμαι (infin. and dat. of person)

Effect or arrange, διαπράττομαι (II. 3. 25; IV. 2. 23)

Make an agreement to, σύνθημα ποιποιῶμαι (infin.)

According to agreement, κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα

Converse with, διαλέγομαι (dat.)

Vote, ψηφίζομαι (I. 4. 15; V. 1. 4)

Vote against, ἀποψηφίζομαι (I. 4. 15)

Put to vote, ἐπιψηφίζω

The decision of the army, τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ

Speak Greek, ἐλληνίζω

In Greek, ἐλληνιστί, ἐλληνικῶς

Speak Persian, περσίζω

In Persian, περσιστί

## 7. DEFEATS AND REVERSES

Defeat, τροπή

Rout, τρέπομαι (V. 4. 16, 23)

Put to flight, εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω

Scatter, διασπείρω

Be scattered, σκεδάννυμαι

Subdue, χειρώ

Conquer, νικάω

Be conquered in battle, ἡττάομαι τῇ μάχῃ

Get the worst of it, μείον ἔχων ἀπαλάσσομαι (pass.)

Give way, ἐκκλίνω

Yield (surrender), ὑφίεμαι (dat. or absolutely)



## 8. DIFFICULTIES AND DANGERS

Approaching danger, κίνδυνος προσιών

Many dangers become apparent to the Greeks, πολλὰ  
προφαίνονται τοῖς Ἕλλησι δεινά

There is danger that, κίνδυνός ἐστι (infin., acc. and  
infin.)

Encounter danger, κινδυνεύω

Cool in danger, ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς φρόνιμος

Out of danger, ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ

Without danger, ἀκινδύνως

Run all risks, διακινδυνεύω

Be surrounded by difficulties, εἶργομαι πάντοθεν ὑπὸ  
ἀποριῶν

Meet with many difficulties, εἰς πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα  
πίπτω

In great perplexity, ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ

He was at a loss what to do, ἤπορεύτο ὃ τι ποιῆσαι

## 9. EMOTIONS

Be annoyed at, ἄχθομαι (dat. or ὅτι); χαλεπῶς φέρω  
(dat.)

Be panic-stricken, ἐκπλήττομαι

Hear with annoyance, ἀκούω βαρέως

Be disturbed, ταραττομαι

Be disheartened, ἀθύμως ἔχω

Be angry with, ὀργίζομαι (dat.); χαλεπαίνω (dat. or  
ὅτι)

Despise, καταφρονέω (gen.)

Envy, φθονέω (dat.)

Hate, μισέω

Respect, αἰδέομαι

Remove distrust, ἀπιστίαν ἐξαιρέω

Appease, κατηρεμίζω

- Be jealous, φιλοτιμέομαι (ὅτι)  
 Be ashamed, αἰσχύνομαι (ὅτι or infin.)  
 Disgrace, καταισχύνω  
 Pity, οἰκτίρω  
 Weep, δακρύνω  
 Laugh, γελάω  
 Laughingly, σὺν γέλῳ  
 Fear falls on, φόβος ἐμπίπτει (dat.)  
 Inspire with fear, φόβον ἐντίθημι (dat.)  
 Make bolder, θρασύτερον ποιέω  
 Stir up to valor, ἐξορμάω ἐπὶ ἀρετήν  
 Cheer on, παρακαλέω (III. 1. 24)  
 Inspire with courage, θάρρος ἐμποιέω (dat.)  
 Regain courage, ἀναθαρρέω  
 With greater confidence, σὺν φρονήματι μείζονι  
 Hope, ἐλπίζω (infin.)  
 Be full of hope, εὐελπίς εἰμι  
 Be very hopeful, ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις εἰμί  
 Have hopes that, ἐλπίδας ἔχω (infin.)  
 Be of good cheer, θαρρέω  
 Be more cheerful, ἐνθυμότερός εἰμι  
 Be grateful to, χάριν οἶδα or ἔχω (dat. of pers., gen. of cause)  
 Return a favor, χάριν ἀποδίδωμι  
 Congratulate on, εὐδαιμονίζω (acc. of pers., gen. of cause)  
 Take pleasure in, ἡδομαι (dat.)

## 10. ENMITY

- Traitor, προδότης  
 Deserter, αὐτόμολος  
 Desert, αὐτομολέω (πρός with acc., and παρά with gen.)  
 Be hostile to anyone, πολεμικῶς πρὸς τινα ἔχω

- Be at variance with, *στασιάζω* (dat., or *πρός* with acc.)  
 Cause enmity, *ἔχθραν παρέχω*  
 Quarrel, *διαφέρομαι* (*ἀμφί* with acc. of thing, *πρός* with acc. of pers.; cf. *ἀμφιλέγω*, I. 5. 11)  
 Betray, *προδίδωμι*  
 Revile, *λοιδορέω*  
 Deceive, *ἀπατάω*  
 Plot against, *ἐπιβουλεύω* (dat.)  
 Be false to, *ψεύδομαι* (*πρός* with acc.)  
 Cause trouble, *πράγματα παρέχω* (dat.)  
 Ill-treat, *κακῶς ποιέω* (acc.)  
 Maltreat outrageously, *δεινὰ ὑβρίζω* (acc.)  
 Inflict irremediable evils on, *ποιέω ἀνήκεστα κακά* (acc.)  
 Cruelly torture, *τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκίζω*  
 Ward off an enemy, *ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξομαι*  
 Suffer evil at the hands of, *κακῶς πάσχω* (*ὑπό* with gen.)

## 11. FIRE

- Fagots, *φρύγανα*  
 Fuel, *ξύλα*  
 Gather wood, *ξυλίζομαι*  
 Set fire to, *ἐνάπτω*  
 Kindle a fire, *πῦρ ἀνακαίω*  
 Sit around a fire, *ἀμφὶ πῦρ κάθημαι*  
 Blaze up, *ἀναλάμπω*  
 Extinguish, *κατασβέννυμι*  
 Burn (intr.), *καίομαι*  
 Burn (trans.), *καίω*  
 Lightning strikes, *σκηπτὸς πίπτει* (*εἰς* with acc.)  
 Smoke appeared, *καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο*

## 12. FLIGHT AND PURSUIT

- Flee, *φεύγω*  
 Take to flight, *φυγῇ τρέπομαι*

Run, *τρέχω*  
 Put to flight, *εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω*  
 Run away, *ἀποδιδράσκω* (I. 4. 8)  
 Pursue, *διώκω*  
 Follow closely, *ἐφέπομαι* (dat.)  
 Follow the trail of, *τῷ στίβῳ ἔπομαι*  
 In the pursuit, *ἐν τῇ διώξει*  
 Take refuge, *καταφεύγω* (*εἰς* with acc.)  
 Escape, *ἐκφεύγω*  
 Be saved, *διασώζομαι*  
 Catch or capture, *αἰρέω, λαμβάνω*

### 13. FOOD SUPPLIES AND MERCHANDISE

Food, *σιτίον*  
 Drink, *ποτόν*  
 Goods, *ῥηθμια*  
 Wine, *οἶνος*  
 Grain, *σῖτος*  
 Hay, *χόρτος κοῦφος*  
 Forage, *χιλός*  
 Foraging party, *προνομή*  
 Store of provisions, *ἐπισιτισμός*  
 Lack of provisions, *ἐπιτηδείων ἀπορία*  
 Dine, *δειπνέω*  
 Take breakfast, *ἀριστάω*  
 Provide breakfast, *πορίζω ἄριστον*  
 Fare sumptuously, *εὐωχέομαι*  
 Be thirsty, *διψάω*  
 Be hungry, *πεινάω*  
 Be starved, *ἀπόλλυμαι ὑπὸ λιμοῦ*  
 Without food, *ἄσιτος*  
 Food failed the army, *σῖτος ἐπέλιπε τὸ στράτευμα*  
 Lack provisions, *σπανίζω ἐπιτηδείων*  
 Be in great want of, *ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει γίγνομαι* (gen.)

Cut off from water, ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος εἶργω  
 Procure provisions, ἐπισιτίζομαι  
 Purchase provisions, ἀγοράζω ἐπιτήδεια  
 Sell provisions, πωλέω ἐπιτήδεια  
 Furnish a market, ἀγορὰν παρέχω  
 Entertain, ξενίζω  
 Furnish a feast, εὐωχίαν παρέχω  
 Share in a feast, μετέχω ἐορτῆς  
 Serve out rations, διαμετρέομαι  
 Feed (trans.), χιλόω  
 Feed (intr.) or pasture, νέμομαι (II. 2. 15)  
 Eat meat, ἐσθίω κρέα  
 Taste, γεύομαι (gen.)  
 Drink, πίνω  
 Boil, ἔψω  
 Roast, ὀπτάω

#### 14. FORTIFICATIONS

Acropolis, ἀκρόπολις  
 Citadel, ἄκρα  
 Fort, τεῖχος  
 Stronghold, χωρίον ὀχυρόν  
 Tower, τύρσις  
 Earthwork (rampart), ἀναβολή  
 Battlement, προμαχεῶν  
 Palisade, σταυρώματα  
 Stakes, σκόλοπες  
 Stockade, χαράκωμα  
 Defences, ἐρύματα  
 Approaches, πρόσοδοι  
 A guard, φυλακή  
 Garrison, φρουροί, φρούριον  
 Garrison commander, φρούραρχος  
 Scaling ladder, κλίμαξ

- In front of the rampart, ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος  
 A wide ditch had been thrown up around it, τάφρος ἦν  
 περὶ αὐτὸ εὐρεία ἀναβεβλημένη  
 Guard, φυλάττω  
 Fortify, τειχίζω  
 Found a city, κατοικίζω πόλιν  
 Build, οἰκοδομέω  
 Intrench, περισταυρόω  
 Cut a ditch, κατατέμνω τάφρον  
 Fence with a ditch, ἀποταφρεύω  
 Fence with a palisade, ἀποσταυρόω  
 Breach a palisade or rampart, διαιρέω σταυρούς  
 Force an entrance, εἰσπίπτω βίᾳ (εἰς with acc.)  
 Take by storm, αἰρέω βίᾳ  
 Break through (gates), κατασχίζω  
 Breach (a wall), διορύττω  
 Scale a city, ὑπερβαίνω εἰς πόλιν  
 Scale the rampart, ὑπερβάλλω τοὺς σταυρούς  
 Besiege by land and sea, πολιορκέω καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ  
 κατὰ θάλατταν  
 Occupy, κατέχω; preoccupy, προκαταλαμβάνω  
 Attack, προσβάλλω (πρός with acc.)  
 Show oneself on the walls, ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν φαίνομαι  
 Make a sally, ἐπεξέρχομαι, ἐκτρέχω  
 Receive within the wall, εἰς τεῖχος δέχομαι  
 Close gates, συγκλείω πύλας  
 Open gates, ἀνοίγω πύλας  
 Surround completely, περικυκλόομαι  
 Shut into the citadel, κατακλείω εἰς τὴν ἄκραν  
 Be repulsed from, τρέπομαι (ἀπό with gen.)  
 Exclude from, ἀποκλείω (gen.)  
 The hill commanded the road, λόφος ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν  
 The stronghold commands the spring, ἡ κρήνη ὑπὸ τῇ  
 ἐπικρατείᾳ τοῦ χωρίου ἐστίν

## 15. FRIENDSHIP

Be friendly towards, *εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω* (dat.)  
 Be on friendly terms with, *φιλικῶς διάκειμαι* (dat.)  
 Avail oneself of friendship, *φιλία χράομαι*  
 Memorials of former friendship, *ὑπομνήματα τῆς  
 πρόσθεν φιλίας*  
 Receive as a friend, *ὡς φίλον δέχομαι*  
 Treat as a friend, *φίλῳ χράομαι*  
 Receive with kindness, *φιλοφρονέομαι*  
 Receive benefits from, *εὖ πάσχω* (ὑπό with gen.)  
 Benefit (assist), *ὠφελέω*  
 Cherish, *θεραπεύω*  
 Protect, *σώζω*  
 Aid, *ἐπικουρέω*, (dat.; V. 8. 25)  
 Welcome (greet), *ἀσπάζομαι*  
 Treat well, *εὖ ποιέω* (acc.)  
 Take sides with, *ὑπάρχω* (dat.)  
 Do him this favor, *αὐτῷ ταῦτα χαρίζομαι*  
 Abstain from injuring, *ἀπέχομαι* (gen.; II. 6. 10)  
 Go to the rescue, *παραβοηθέω, βοηθέω* (dat.)

## 16. GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS

North, *ἡ ἄρκτος*  
 South, *ἡ μεσημβρία*  
 East, *ἡ ἑως*  
 West, *ἡ ἐσπέρα*  
 Western Armenia, *Ἀρμενία ἡ πρὸς ἐσπέραν*  
 Border city of Cilicia, *τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτη πόλις*  
 Next Mysian territory, *πρὸς τῇ Μυσία χώρα*  
 Sea, *θάλαττα*  
 Island, *νῆσος*  
 Cape, *ἀκτὴ*  
 Gulf or bay, *κόλπος*  
 Level plain, *πεδῖον ὁμαλές*

Desert, ἐρημία  
 Colony, ἀποικία  
 Town, πόλισμα  
 Village, κώμη  
 District or region, τόπος  
 Extent of territory, πλῆθος χώρας  
 Interior, ἡ μεσόγαια  
 Shore, αἰγιαλός  
 On the coast, ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ  
 On the frontier, ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁρίοις  
 Meadow, λειμών  
 Swamp, ἔλος  
 Woods, ὕλη  
 Thicket, τὸ δασύ  
 Heavily wooded, δασὺς δένδρων  
 Roughness of the country, ἡ δυσχωρία  
 Be situated, κεῖμαι, οἰκέομαι  
 Found, κατοικίζω  
 Inhabit, οἰκέω  
 Inhabitants, οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες  
 Villagers, κωμῆται  
 Citizens, πολῖται  
 Extend down to, καθήκω (εἰς with acc.)

#### 17. TERMS OF GOVERNMENT

Rule, ἄρχω (gen.), κρατέω (gen.)  
 Be king of, βασιλεύω (gen.)  
 Be established in the kingdom, εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν  
 καθίσταμαι  
 Place on the throne, εἰς τὸν θρόνον καθίζω  
 Make king, βασιλέα καθίστημι  
 Lay claim to the kingdom, τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀντιποιέομαι  
 (dat. of pers.)  
 Possess, κατέχω



Be governor of (a country), *σατραπεύω* (acc.)

Be master of, *ἐγκρατὴς εἰμι* (gen.)

Make master of, *ἐγκρατῇ ποιέω* (gen.,

Make governor, *σατράπην ποιέω*

Render submissive to, *ταπεινὸν παρεχω* (dat.)

Do homage to, *προσκυνέω* (acc.)

Regain an empire, *ἀρχὴν ἀπολαμβάνω*

Deprive of an empire, *ἀρχὴν λαμβάνω* (*παρά* with gen.)

Have the empire of land and sea, *ἐν τῇ γῇ ἄρχω καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ*

Obey, *πείθομαι* (dat.)

Disobey, *ἀπειθέω* (dat.)

Revolt (from *and* to), *ἀφίσταμαι* (*ἀπό* with gen. and *πρός* with acc.)

Be subjects of, *ὑπήκοός εἰμι* (gen. or dat.)

At the court of the king, *ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις*  
(cf. *παρά* with dat.; V. 1. 15)

The most powerful, *οἱ μέγιστα δυνάμενοι*

Tribute, *δασμός*

### 18. GUARDS

Advance guards, *προφύλακες*

Night-watch, *νυκτοφύλαξ*

Guard, *φυλάττω*

Station guards, *καθίστημι φύλακας*

Mount guard in turn, *κατὰ μέρος μερισθέντες φυλάττουσι*

Guard the gates, *τὰς πύλας φρουρέω*

Be on one's guard, *φυλάττομαι* (acc. with *ὥστε* and infin., VII. 3. 35; *μή* with subjv., II. 4. 16)

No watch had been set, *οὐδεμία φυλακὴ καθειστήκει*

The watchword passes along, *τὸ σύνθημα παρέρχεται*

Send scouts in advance, *σκοποὺς προπέμπω*

Reconnoiter, *τὰ ἔμπροσθεν σκοπέω*

For the purpose of reconnoitering, *κατασκοπῆς ἕνεκα*

## 19. LOSSES

The wounded, οἱ τετρωμένοι  
 Prisoner of war, αἰχμάλωτος  
 Lose one's life, στερέομαι σώματος  
 Lose men, ἀποβάλλω σώματα ἀνδρῶν  
 Suffer no loss, οὐδέν πάσχω  
 Not without great loss, οὐκ ἀνὲν πολλῶν νεκρῶν  
 Suffer severely, κακῶς πάσχω  
 Wound (in), τιτρώσκω (εἰς with acc.)  
 Receive wounds, τραύματα λαμβάνω  
 Be drowned, πνίγομαι  
 Perish, ἀπόλλυμαι  
 Fall (in battle), πίπτω, ἀποθνήσκω  
 Injure, βλάπτω  
 Exterminate, ἀφανίζω  
 Cut to pieces, κατακόπτω  
 Slaughter, σφάττω  
 Kill, ἀποκτείνω  
 Capture alive, ζωγρέω, ζῶντα αἰρέω

## 20. MARCHES

March inland, ἀνάβασις, ἄνοδος  
 During the march, ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ  
 In the middle of the march, κατὰ μέσον τὸν σταθμόν  
 The rest of the journey, ἡ λοιπὴ πορεία  
 March inland, πορεύομαι ἄνω  
 March forward, εἶμι τοῦ πρόσω  
 March back, τοῦμπαλιν ἄπειμι  
 March with army in battle array, ἐλαύνω συντεταγμένῳ  
 τῷ στρατεύματι  
 Make forced marches, μακροὺς σταθμοὺς ἐλαύνω  
 Complete the march, διατελέω (πρὸς with acc.)  
 Retard the march, σχολαίαν ποιέω τὴν πορείαν  
 Hinder one's march, τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀποκωλύω (acc.)

- Begin a march, ἐξορμάω ὁδόν  
 Set out, ὀρμάομαι  
 Lead the van, ἡγέομαι  
 Bring up the rear, ὀπισθοφυλακέω  
 Leave the rear unguarded, ἔρημα καταλείπω τὰ ὀπισθεν  
 Overtake, καταλαμβάνω  
 Pass by, παρέρχομαι (acc.)  
 Approach, πελάζω (dat.)  
 Advance, πρόειμι  
 Go to meet, ἀντίος εἶμι (dat.)  
 Rush, ἵεμαι  
 Run, τρέχω  
 Make a detour, κύκλῳ περιέειμι  
 Turn aside, ἀποτρέπομαι  
 Turn back, ἀναστρέφω (intr.)  
 Return, ἀποτρέπομαι  
 Retreat, ἀποχωρέω  
 Guide, ἡγέομαι (dat.)  
 They broke into a run, δρόμος ἐγένετο αὐτοῖς  
 At the double quick, δρόμῳ  
 Be in disorder, ἀναταράττομαι  
 Straggle, πλανάομαι  
 Retreat facing the foe, ἐπὶ πόδα ἀναχωρέω  
 The march resembled a flight, ἡ πορεία ὁμοία φυγῇ  
 ἐγένετο  
 Halt, καταλύω  
 Mount, ἀναβαίνω (ἐπί with acc.)  
 Unhorse, κατασπάω ἀφ' ἵππου  
 Dismount, καταπηδάω (ἀπό with gen.)  
 Ride, ἐλαύνω, ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχέομαι  
 Ride up, ὑπελαύνω  
 Ride away, ἀφιππεύω  
 Ride past, παρελαύνω (acc.)  
 Ride at full speed, ἐλαύνω ἀνὰ κράτος

Make the journey by sea, *κατὰ θάλατταν τὴν πορείαν ποιῶμαι*

Go on foot *or* by land, *πεζῇ εἶμι*

#### 21. MISSILES

Shoot, *τοξεύω, ἀκοντίζω, σφενδονάω*

Be shot in the ribs, *τοξεύομαι εἰς τὰς πλευράς*

The shot fell short, *οὐκ ἐξικνούντο (τοξεύματα *or* λίθοι)*

The shot penetrated, *τὰ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει (διά with gen.)*

Under fire, *βαλλόμενος*

Return fire, *ἀντιτοξεύω*

Ready to fire, *διηγκυλισμένος *or* διηγκυλωμένος*

Throw stones, *βάλλω λίθοις (acc.), λίθους ῥίπτω*

Roll down stones, *κυλίνδω λίθους*

Avoid missiles, *βέλη φυλάττομαι*

Get out of range, *ἔξω βελῶν ἀποχωρέω*

Be within range (*lit.*, the arrows reached), *τὰ τοξεύματα ἐξικνούντο (gen.)*

Missiles were hurled, *βέλη ἐφέρετο*

There was a shower of missiles, *τὰ βέλη ὁμοῦ ἐφέρετο (V. 2. 14)*

Every shot told, *οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρός*

Miss, *ἀμαρτάνω (gen.)*

Draw a bow, *ἔλκω τόξον*

Exposed to arrows, *γυμνοὶ πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα*

Practice archery, *μελετάω τοξεύει*

A good archer, *τοξικῆς μελετηρός*

#### 22. MONEY

Money, *ἀργύριον, χρήματα*

Money for provisions, *σιτηρέσιον*

Passage money, *ναῦλον*

Price, *τιμή*

Full pay, *μισθὸς ἐντελής*

Paymaster, *μισθοδότης*  
 At public expense, *ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ*  
 Hire, *μισθόω*  
 Pay, *μισθὸν ἀποδίδωμι*, *τελέω* (III. 3. 18)  
 Pay wages, *μισθοδοτέω* (dat.)  
 Demand pay, *ἀπαιτέω μισθόν*  
 Be due, *ὀφείλομαι*  
 Be in receipt of, *φέρω*  
 Buy, *ὠνέομαι*  
 Sell, *πωλέω*  
 Be worth, *δύναμαι* (acc.)  
 Spend (on), *δαπανάω* (*εἰς* with acc.)  
 Collect from, *πράττω* (with two acc.; VII. 6. 17)

## 23. MOUNTAINS

Mountain crest, *ἀκρωνυχία ὄρους*  
 Mountain summit, *κορυφή ὄρους*  
 Within the mountains, *εἰσὼ τῶν ὄρων*  
 The mountain surrounds, *τὸ ὄρος περιέχει*  
 Go over the mountains, *ὑπερβάλλω τὰ ὄρη*  
 Go up the mountains, *ἀναβαίνω ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη*  
 Overhanging rock, *ὑπερέχουσα πέτρα*  
 Ravine, *χαράδρα*  
 Valley, *νάπος*  
 Glen, *ἄγκος*  
 Recess, *μυχός*  
 Declivity, *τὸ ὄρθιον*  
 Hill, *λόφος*  
 Hillock, *γήλοφος*  
 Heights, *τὰ ἄκρα, τὰ ἄνω*  
 Cave, *ἄντρον*  
 Down hill, *εἰς τὸ πρηνές*  
 Down the incline, *κατὰ τοῦ πρηνοῦς*  
 Overhang, *κρέμαμαι* (*ὑπέρ* with gen.)  
 March up hill, *ὄρθιον εἶμι*

## 24. NAUTICAL TERMS

Anchor, ἄγκυρα  
 Bow, πρῶρα  
 Stern, πρύμνα  
 Sailor, ναύτης  
 Captain, ναύκληρος  
 Admiral, ναύαρχος  
 Pilot, κυβερνήτης  
 Lookout, πρῳρεύς  
 Shoal, τέναγος  
 Mole, χηλή  
 Mart, ἐμπόριον  
 Dockyard, νεώριον  
 Port or harbor, λιμὴν

## 25. OFFICERS

General, στρατηγός  
 Captain, λοχαγός  
 Lieutenant, ὑπαρχος  
 Commander-in-chief, αὐτοκράτωρ ἄρχων  
 A successor, διάδοχος  
 Appoint general, στρατηγὸν ἀποδείκνυμι  
 Act as general, στρατηγέω στρατηγίαν  
 Be in command, ἄρχω (gen.), προϊίσταμαι (gen.)  
 Place in command, προϊίστημι (gen.)  
 Undertake the command, ὑφίσταμαι τὴν ἀρχήν  
 Resigned the command, τὴν στρατηγίαν ἀπείπον  
 Command under Cyrus, στρατηγέω παρὰ Κύρῳ  
 Lead, ἡγέομαι (gen. or dat.)

## 26. MILITARY OPERATIONS

Expedition, στρατεία  
 Make an expedition, στρατεύομαι  
 Make an ambush, ἐνέδραν ποιέω  
 Lie in ambush, ἐνεδρεύω

Form a junction with, *συμμείγνυμι* (dat.)

Waylay, *κλωπεύω*

Invade, *εἰσβάλλω* (*εἰς* with acc.)

Station companies in reserve behind the main line, *ἐπιτάσσω τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους*

Conquer territory, *χώραν καταστρέφομαι*

Occupy territory, *χώραν κατέχω*

Acquire additional territory, *χώραν προσκτάομαι*

Recover territory, *χώραν ἀπολαμβάνω*

### 27. PASSES AND ROADS

Narrow pass, *στενοχωρία*

Defile, *τὸ στενόν*

Untrodden road, *ἀτριβῆς ὁδός*

Trodden road, *στειβομένη ὁδός*

Wagon-track, *ἀμαξιτὸς ὁδός*

Road practicable for beasts of burden, *ὁδὸς δυνατὴ ὑποζυγίοις*

Road impracticable for an army to enter, *ὁδὸς ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι*

Descent for one at a time, *ἐφ' ἑνὸς κατάβασις*

Guide for the road, *ἡγεμὼν τῆς ὁδοῦ*

Obstruct a pass, *κωλύω πάροδον*

Go through a pass, *πάροδον παρέρχομαι*

Force a passage, *παρέρχομαι βίᾳ*

Relieve the blockade of the road, *λύω τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ*

Grant a passage, *διίημι* (IV. 1. 8)

Send by the quickest route, *πέμπω τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν*

Go around by a circuitous route, *κύκλῳ περιίημι*

Lead (of a road), *φέρω*

Along the road, *κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν*

On both sides of the road, *ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ*

Repair a road, ὁδοποιέω

Cut off from the road, τῆς ὁδοῦ διείργω

Lead the way, ὁδὸν ἡγέομαι (IV. 1. 24)

Miss the way out, διαμαρτάνω τῆς ἐξόδου

We shall go by the road we came, ἄπιμεν ἤνπερ (ὁδὸν)  
ἦλθομεν

Start on the inland journey, ὁρμάω τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν

## 28. PEACE

Ambassador, πρέσβυς

Herald, κῆρυξ

With a flag of truce, σὺν κηρυκείῳ

Make peace with, σπένδομαι (dat. of pers., terms  
expressed by ἐφ' ᾧτε, etc.; IV. 4. 6)

Beg for peace, εἰρήνης δέομαι

Make peace with, καταλύω (πρός with acc.; cf. κατα-  
λύω πόλεμον, abs.)

Aid in effecting a truce, συμπράττω τὰς σπονδάς

Be reconciled to, συναλλάττομαι (πρός with acc.)

Make an alliance with, φιλίαν διαπράττομαι (πρός  
with acc.)

Accept an alliance, συμμαχίαν δέχομαι

Be an ally, συμμάχομαι (dat.)

Take as allies, συμμάχους λαμβάνω

Give hostages, ὁμήρους δίδωμι

Exchange pledges, δίδωμι καὶ λαμβάνω πιστά

Pledge oneself to do, ἐγγυάομαι (acc. and infin.)

Be an ambassador, πρεσβεύω

Swear falsely, ἐπιορκέω

Break a treaty, λύω σπονδάς

Contrary to treaty, παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς

According to treaty, κατὰ τὰς σπονδάς

During the truce, ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς



## 29. PLUNDER

Marauder, κλάψ

Robber, ληστής

Cattle, κτήνη, βόες

Plunder, ἀρπάζω, διαρπάζω, λήζομαι

Ravage, δηόω, πορθέω

Lay waste, φθείρω

Despoil, φέρω καὶ ἄγω (II. 6. 5)

Rob, ἀποσυλάω χρήματα (acc.)

Burn, κατακαίω

Sack, πορθέω

Dispossess of land, ἀφαιρέομαι γῆν (acc.)

Go out for plunder, ἐπὶ λείαν ἔξιμι

Live by plunder, ἀπὸ ληστείας τὸν βίον ἔχω

Scattered in search of plunder, ἐσκεδασμένοι καθ' ἀρπαγὴν

Collect (slaves and cattle), συναλίζω

Sell plunder, λαφυροπωλέω

Divide among, διανέμω (acc. and dat.)

## 30. RIVERS

River bank, ὄχθη

Source, πηγαί

Mouth, στόμα

Ford, διάβασις, πόρος

The river rises in, αἱ τοῦ ποταμοῦ πηγαί εἰσι (ἐκ with gen.)

Empty into, ἐμβάλλω (εἰς with acc.)

Flow through, διαρρέω (διά with gen.)

Encircle, περιρρέω κύκλω

Along the river, παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν

On the left bank, τὸν ποταμόν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχω

On the right bank, τὸν ποταμόν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχω

Put the river in the rear, ποιέομαι ὀπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν

Bridge of boats, γέφυρα ἔξευγμένη πλοίοις  
 Bridge over, γέφυρα (ἐπί with dat.)  
 Destroy a bridge, γέφυραν λύω  
 Cross by bridge, διαβαίνω ἐπὶ γεφύρας  
 Cross by boat, διαβαίνω πλοίοις  
 Cross by rafts, διαβαίνω σχεδίαῖς  
 Cross on foot, διαβαίνω πεζῇ  
 Swim, νέω  
 Get wet, βρέχομαι  
 Up the river, ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμόν  
 Down the river, κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν  
 At a distance from the source, πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν  
 To the other side of the river, εἰς τὸ πέραν τοῦ  
 ποταμοῦ

## 31. SHIPS

Fair voyage, πλοῦς καλός  
 Return voyage, κατάπλους  
 Provision-ship, σιταγωγὸν πλοῖον  
 Ship of war, μακρὸν πλοῖον  
 Man-of-war, τριήρης  
 Merchantman, ὀλκάς  
 Thirty-oared vessel, τριακόντορος  
 Fifty-oared vessel, πεντηκόντορος  
 Fishing smack, ἀλιευτικὸν πλοῖον  
 Boat, πλοῖον  
 Canoe, μονόξυλον πλοῖον  
 Embark (intr.), ἐμβαίνω (εἰς with acc.); (trans.),  
 ἐμβιβάζω (εἰς with acc.)  
 Disembark (intr.), ἀποβαίνω; (trans.), ἀποβιβάζω  
 Launch, καθέλκω  
 Put on board, ἐμβιβάζω (εἰς with acc.)  
 Take out cargoes, ἀγώγιμα ἐξαιρέω  
 Carry (of a ship), ἄγω

Take across, διαβιβάζω  
 Be conveyed by sea, κατὰ θάλατταν κομίζομαι  
 Unship the rudder, πηδάλιον παραλύω  
 Anchor, ὀρμίζω  
 Lie at anchor (off), ὀρμέω (παρά with acc.)  
 Blockade, ἐφορμέω  
 Put in (to port), κατάγω (V. 1. 11, 16)  
 Set sail, ἀνάγομαι (V. 7. 17)  
 Sail away, ἀποπλέω  
 Coast (or sail past), παραπλέω  
 Be shipwrecked, ἐκπίπτω  
 Run ashore, ὀκέλλω  
 Sink (trans.), καταδύω; (intr.), καταδύομαι  
 Employ for transportation, εἰς παραγωγὴν χράομαι  
 By rowing, κώπαις  
 On board, ἐπὶ (gen.)

### 32. SIGNALS AND COMMANDS

On a signal, ἀπὸ σημείου  
 Make a signal, σημαίνω  
 Signal with a trumpet, σημαίνω κέρατι  
 The trumpet sounded the charge, ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐπε-  
 φθέγγετο  
 Light beacon fires, πυρσεύω  
 Watch-fires appeared, πυρὰ ἐφαίνετο  
 Pass the word, παρεγγνάω (infin. or acc. and infin.)  
 Carry out an order, τὸ παραγγελλόμενον ποιέω  
 According to instructions, κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα  
 At the word of command, ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως  
 Sound the retreat, σάλπιγγι ἀνακαλέομαι  
 Give the signal for battle, τὸ πολεμικὸν σημαίνω  
 Give the signal for going to rest, σημαίνω τῷ κέρατι  
 ὡς ἀναπαύεσθαι

## 33. TIME

Pass (trans.), *διάγω*; (intr.), *παρέρχομαι*

Approach (of time), *ἔπειμι*

Waste time, *διατρίβω*

Be five days late, *ὕστερίζω πέντε ἡμέραις*

Arrive five days before (a person), *πέντε ἡμέραις  
πρότερος ἀφικνέομαι* (gen.)

Yesterday, *χθές*

To-day, *τήμερον*

To-morrow, *αὔριον*

The next day, *τῇ ὕστεραία, τῇ ἄλλῃ*

The day before, *τῇ προτεραία, τῇ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ*

On the following day, *τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ*

On the following morning, *εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω*

Last night, *τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα*

Near daybreak, *πρὸς ἡμέραν*

Day dawned, *ἕως ἐγένετο*

At sunrise, *ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι*

At sunset, *ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ*

At daybreak, *ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ*

Before daybreak, *πρὸ ἡμέρας*

After daybreak, *μεθ' ἡμέραν*

Early, *πρῶ*

Late, *ὀψέ* (cf. *ὀψίζω*, to come late, IV. 5. 5)

In the afternoon, *τῆς δειλῆς*

By day, *ἡμέραν*

All day, *ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν*

Every day, *ἐκάστης τῆς ἡμέρας*

Noon, *μέσον ἡμέρας*

Towards evening, *εἰς ἑσπέραν, ἀμφὶ δειλὴν*

Immediately after nightfall, *εὐθὺς ἀφ' ἑσπέρας*

In the course of the night, *προιούσης νυκτός*

By night, *νυκτός*

All night long, *διὰ τῆς νυκτός*

About midnight, *περὶ μέσας νύκτας*  
 Now and then, *ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε*  
 As before, *ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν*  
 For the present, *τὸ νῦν εἶναι*  
 At the present moment, *ἐν τῷ παρόντι*  
 For the future, *τὸ λοιπόν, εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον*  
 For a long time, *πολὺν χρόνον*  
 Just about this time, *σχεδὸν ἀμφὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον*  
 From this time, *ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου*  
 All the time, *πάντα τὸν χρόνον*  
 In half the time, *ἡμίσει χρόνῳ*  
 A second time, *τὸ δεύτερον*  
 A third time, *τὸ τρίτον*  
 In a short time, *ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ*  
 After a short interval, *οὐ πολλοῦ χρόνου μετὰ γενο-  
 μένου*  
 Not long after, *χρόνῳ οὐ συχνῷ ὕστερον*  
 Eleven days before, *τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ (ἡμέρᾳ) ἀπ' ἐκείνης  
 τῆς ἡμέρας*  
 Annually, *κατ' ἐνιαυτόν*  
 Per month, *τοῦ μηνός*  
 At the end of the month, *ἐξελθούσης τοῦ μηνός*

### 34. TRIAL AND PUNISHMENT

Judges, *κριταί*  
 Arrest, *συλλαμβάνω*  
 Without trial, *ἄκριτος*  
 Undergo trial, *δίκην ὑπέχω*  
 Bring to trial, *εἰς δίκας καθίστημι*  
 Charge one with, *αἰτέομαι* (acc. and infin., I. 2. 20;  
*ὅτι*, III. 1. 7)  
 Accuse one of, *κατηγορέω* (gen. of pers. with *ὅτι*)  
 Blame, *μέμφομαι*  
 Exonerate from blame, *αἰτίας ἀπολύω*

- Decide against, *καταδικάζω* (gen.)  
 Convict of, *ἐξελέγχω* (partic., II. 5. 27)  
 Condemn to death, *θανατόω*  
 Punish, *δίκην ἐπιτίθημι* (dat. of pers., gen. of cause)  
 Be punished, *δίκην δίδωμι*  
 Deserving the severest punishment, *τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης ἄξιος*  
 Get one's deserts, *δίκαια πάσχω*  
 Be fined, *ὀφλισκάνω* (acc. of amount, gen. of cause)  
 Beat, *πληγὰς ἐμβάλλω* (dat.), *μαστιγώω*  
 Be beaten, *πληγὰς λαμβάνω*  
 Banish, *ἐκβάλλω*  
 Take vengeance on (one) for, *τιμωρέομαι* (acc. of pers., gen. of cause)  
 Exile, *ἐκβάλλω*  
 Be exiled, *ἐκπίπτω*  
 Put to death, *ἀποκτείνω*

## 35. CLASSES OF TROOPS

- Heavy-armed troops, *ὀπλίται*  
 Light-armed troops, *γυμνήται*  
 Bowmen, *τοξόται*  
 Targeteers, *πελτασταί*  
 Slingers, *σφενδονῆται*  
 Spearmen, *δορυφόροι*  
 Infantry, *τὸ πεζόν, οἱ πεζοί*  
 Infantry forces, *δύναμις πεζή*  
 Cavalry, *τὸ ἵππικόν, οἱ ἵππεις*  
 Cavalry forces, *δύναμις ἵππική*  
 Naval forces, *δύναμις ναυτική*  
 Mercenaries, *μισθοφόροι, ξένοι, τὸ ξενικόν*  
 Volunteers, *ἐθελονταί*  
 Member of a company, *λοχίτης*  
 Picked men, *ἐπίλεκτοι*

Outposts, *προφύλακες*  
 Scouts, spies, *σκοποί*  
 Deserters, *αυτόμολοι*  
 Stragglers, *ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι*  
 Camp followers, *ἀκόλουθοι*

### 36. MANOEUVERS OF TROOPS

Practice, *τριβή*  
 Discipline is a source of safety, *εὐταξία σῶζει*  
 Lack of discipline, *ἀταξία*  
 Undisciplined, *ἄτακτος*  
 According to rank, *κατὰ τάξεις*  
 In three divisions, *τριχῇ*  
 Scattered in small parties, *κατὰ ὀλίγους ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι*  
 Draw up, *συντάττω*  
 Draw up against, *ἀντιτάττω*  
 Draw up in fours, *τάττω ἐπὶ τεττάρων*  
 Draw up in companies and squadrons, *κατ' ἑλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις τάττω*  
 Draw up many deep, *ἐπὶ πολλῶν τάττω*  
 Draw up few deep, *ἐπ' ὀλίγων τάττω*  
 Be drawn up in close order, *συσπειράομαι*  
 Draw up in line, *εἰς φάλαγγα τάττω*  
 In line, *ἐπὶ φάλαγγος*  
 Fall into line, *καθίσταμαι εἰς τάξιν*  
 Advance in line, *ἐν ἴσῳ πρόσειμι*  
 Follow in line, *ἐν τάξει ἔπομαι*  
 Extend the line, *παρατείνω τὴν φάλαγγα*  
 Lead into line by a flank movement, *παρ' ἀσπίδα παράγω ἐπὶ φάλαγγος*

- Within the lines, ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος  
 In column (lead), κατὰ κέρας (ἄγω)  
 Lack troops, ἀπορέω στρατιωτῶν  
 Collect troops, ἀθροίζω στρατιώτας  
 Assemble, ἀλίζομαι  
 Enlist, λαμβάνω  
 Muster (intr.), ἀθροίζομαι  
 Pick up, ἀναλαμβάνω  
 Make a levy, συλλογὴν ποιέω  
 Support an army, τρέφω στράτευμα  
 Divide an army, σχίζω στράτευμα  
 Display an army, ἐπιδείκνυμι στράτευμα  
 Inspect, ἐπισκοπέω  
 Review, ἐξέτασιν ποιέω (gen.), θεωρέω  
 March past, παρελαύνω  
 Defile, ἐκμηρύνομαι  
 Turn right about, ἀναστρέφομαι ἐπὶ δόρυ  
 Form a square, πλαίσιον ποιέω  
 Wheel, ἐπικάμπτω  
 Face about, στρέφομαι  
 Halt (trans.), ἐφίστημι  
 Fold back the wing, ἀναπτύσσω τὸ κέρας  
 Place on the left wing, ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον τάττω  
 Place in the center, κατὰ μέσον τάττω  
 Station in the same formation, εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα  
     καθίστημι  
 Bring up the rear, ὀπισθοφυλακέω  
 Fill up the center, τὸ μέσον ἐκπίμπλημι  
 Draw off (cause to retire), ἀναχωρίζω  
 Withdraw, ἀποσπᾶω  
 Lead back, ἀπάγω  
 Outflank, περιπτύσσω  
 Desert the ranks, λείπω τὰς τάξεις  
 Put troops in motion, στρατιώτας κινέω



## 37. VICTORY

The victor, ὁ κρατῶν  
 Without a blow, ἀμαχεί  
 Win battles, μάχας νικάω  
 Conquer in battle, μάχῃ νικάω  
 Be completely victorious, τὰ πάντα νικάω  
 Get the better of, περιγίγνομαι (gen.)  
 Be superior in numbers, περὶεμι πλήθει (gen.)  
 Set up a trophy, τρόπαιον ἵστημι  
 The result of the expedition was favorable, τὸ τέλος  
 ἦν καλὸν τῆς ἐξόδου

## 38. WAR

War between, πόλεμος (dat. and πρὸς with acc., II. 6. 2)  
 War without a truce, πόλεμος ἀκήρυκτος  
 Warlike equipment, ὅπλις  
 Equipped for war, ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ πόλεμον  
 Means for waging war against, πόροι πρὸς τὸ (dat. of  
 pers.) πολεμεῖν  
 Most skilled in war, τὰ πολέμια ἄριστος  
 Be versed in the tactics and the art of war, ἐπιστήμων  
 εἰμι τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεις τε καὶ ὀπλομαχίαν  
 Be at war, πολεμέω (abs.)  
 Make war on, πολεμέω (dat. or πρὸς with acc.)  
 Wage every kind of war with, διὰ παντὸς πολέμου εἰμι  
 (dat.)  
 Declared war, προεῖπον πόλεμον (dat. of pers.)  
 Undertake war, ἀναιρέομαι πόλεμον  
 Begin war, ἐκφέρω πόλεμον (πρὸς with acc.; cf.  
 ἐκφαίνω πόλεμον)  
 Defeat in war, καταπολεμέω  
 Leave off war, παύομαι πολέμου  
 Join in war against, συμπολεμέω (dat. and ἐπὶ with acc.)

## 39. WEATHER

Fair weather, εὐδία

Calm, γαλήνη

Frost, ῥίγος

Cloud, νεφέλη

Heavy sea, θάλαττα μεγάλη

Contrary wind was blowing, ἄνεμος ἐναντίος ἔπνει

Sail with a fair wind, πνεύματι καλῷ πλέω

The violence of the wind subsided, τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ  
πνεύματος ἔληξε

The wind carries, ὁ ἄνεμος φέρει

The sea runs high (rages), ἡ θάλαττα μεγάλη ἐπιφέρεται

There was a heavy rain, ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ

There was a heavy fall of snow, ἐγένετο χιῶν πολλή

A great storm arises, γίγνεται χειμῶν πολὺς

A mist fell, ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο

It becomes clear, διαιβριάζει

Freeze, πήγνυμι (IV. 5. 3)

## ADJECTIVES

Abundant, ἄφθονος	Many more, πολλαπλάσιος
Acquainted with, ἔμπειρος (gen.)	(gen.)
Alive, ζῶς	Mighty, μέγας
All kinds of, παντοῖος	Much, πολὺς
Alone, μόνος	Narrow, στενός
Beautiful, καλός	Native, πατρῷος
Bold, θαρραλέος	Noble, εὐγενής
Brave, ἀνδρείος	Plenty, ἀφθονος
Certain (a certain one), τὶς	Rich, εὐδαίμων, πολλοῦ
Dead, τεθνηκώς	ἄξιος (Ex. LXXXVII)
Different (Ex. LXXXIII), πολὺς	Rugged, τραχὺς
Difficult, χαλεπός, δύσ- πορος (of a country or road)	Sharp, ὀξύς
Easy, ῥάδιος, εὐπορος (of a road)	Short (of time), βραχύς, οὐ συχνός
Empty, ἔρημος	Small, μικρός
Evident, δῆλος	Strong, ἰσχυρός
Experienced, ἔμπειρος	Swift, ταχύς
Few, ὀλίγοι	Treacherous, διπλοῦς
Fit, ἐπιτήδειος, ἱκανός	True, ἀληθής
Flourishing, εὐδαίμων	Unarmed, ἄοπλος
Fordable, διαβατός	Various, πολὺς
Friendly, φίλιος	Warlike, πολεμικός
Full of, μεστός (gen.)	Weak, ἀσθενής
Great, μέγας	Wealthy, πλούσιος
High, ὑψηλός	Well-armed, εὐοπλος
Honorable, καλός	Whole, ὅλος
Hostile, πολέμιος	Wooden, ξύλινος
Long, μακρός	Wooded, thickly, δασύς δένδρων
Many, πολλοί	Worthless, φαῦλος
	Wounded, τετραωμένος
	Young, νέος

## ADVERBS

About, ὡς (I. 2. 4)	Here, αὐτοῦ, ἐνθάδε
Afterwards, ὕστερον	Homewards, οἴκαδε
Again, αὖθις	Immediately, εὐθύς
Almost, σχεδόν, ὅσον οὐ	Justly, δικαίως
Already, ἤδη	Lately, νεωστί
Always, ἀεί	Later, ὕστερον
At last, τέλος	Magnificently, μεγαλοπρε- πῶς
At length, τέλος	Much, πολύ
At present, νῦν	Near, ἐγγύς (II. 4. 1)
Before, πρόσθεν	No longer, οὐκέτι
Completely, παντελῶς	Once, ἅπαξ, ποτέ
Constantly, συνεχῶς	Only, μόνον
Continually, συνεχῶς	Particularly, μάλιστα
Courageously, θαρραλέως	Presently, τάχα
Cunningly, σοφῶς	Quickly, ταχέως
Easily, ῥαδίως	Rather, μᾶλλον
Far, πόρρω (I. 3. 12)	Sharply, ἰσχυρῶς
Fearfully, δεινῶς	Slowly, βραδέως
Fiercely, βιαίως	Sometimes, ἐνίστε
Finally, τέλος	Sufficiently, ἱκανῶς
Foolishly, εὐηθῶς	Swiftly, ταχέως
Formerly, πρόσθεν	Thereupon, ἐνταῦθα
Frequently, πολλάκις	Unexpectedly, ἐξ ἀπροσ- δοκήτου
From all sides, πάντοθεν	Very, πάνυ
Full (about), εἰς (I. 2. 3)	Well, εὖ
Furiously, ἰσχυρῶς	
Greatly, μάλα	

First semester -

ἀγγέλλω ἀγγελῶ ἡγγειλα ἡγγελκα

ἡγγελμαι ἡγγέλσθην (ἀγγελ-)

announce

ἄγω ἄβω ἡγαγον ἦχα ἦγμαι ἦχσθην

lead

αἴρω αἶρω ἦρα ἦρκα ἦρμαι ἦρσθην

take up.

ἡρέμην

(αἶρ-)

αἰρέω αἰρήσω εἶδον ἦρηκα ἦρημαι

ἡρέσθην

take

{ αἶρε - }  
{ εἶλ - }

αἰσχύνω αἰσχυνῶ ἥσχυνα ἥσχύνσθην

disgrace

(αἰσχυν-)

ἀκούω ἀκούσομαι ἤκουσα ἀκήκοα

ἠκούσθην - hear.

ἀλλάσσω ἀλλάβω ἥλλαβα ἥλλαχα

ἥλλαγμαι

ἥλλάχθην

(ἀλλαγ-)

change

ἥλλάγην

ἄρπάζω ἄρπάσσω ἥρπασα ἥρπακα

ἥρπασμαι

ἥρπάσθην

seize

## INDEX TO WORD-LISTS

### A

Acquire, 26  
 Admiral, 24  
 Advance, 4, 20  
 Advantage, have the, 37  
 Advise, 6  
 Aid, 15  
 Alight (dismount), 20  
 Ally, 28  
 Ambassador, 28  
 Anchor, 24  
 Angry with, 9  
 Appease, 9  
 Approach, 20; *of time*, 33  
 Archer (bowman), 35  
 Arms, order under, 1; sur-  
     render—, 1  
 Army, 2  
 Arrange (draw up), 36  
 Array against (draw up  
     against), 36  
 Arrest, 34  
 Arrows, exposed to, 21  
 Ascend (go up), 23  
 Assemble, 6, 36  
 Assist (aid), 15  
 Attack, 4, 14

### B

Baggage, 3  
 Bank, 30  
 Banquet (feast), 13  
 Battles, 4, 37

Beasts of carriage (pack-ani-  
     mals), 3  
 Beat, 34  
 Benefits, 15  
 Besiege, 14  
 Blame, 34  
 Boat, 31  
 Bow, 21  
 Bowman, 35  
 Borders (frontiers), 16  
 Breakfast, 13  
 Break through, 4  
 Bridge, 30  
 Burn, 11

### C

Camp, 5  
 Canoe, 31  
 Captain, 25  
 Castle (fort or tower), 14  
 Catch, 12  
 Cattle, 29  
 Cavalry, 35  
 Charge, 4  
 Check, 4  
 Collect, 22, 29, 36  
 Come near (approach), 20  
 Command, 25, 32  
 Conduct (lead), 25  
 Conference, 6  
 Conquer, 7  
 Cross, 30  
 Crossing (ford), 30  
 Cut to pieces, 4

## D

Danger, be in, 8; many — appeared, 8  
 Day, 33  
 Daybreak, 33  
 Death, 34  
 Deceive, 10  
 Defend oneself, 4  
 Deliver (surrender), 1  
 Demand, 22  
 Depart (set out), 20  
 Despise, 9  
 Disembark, 31  
 Disgrace, 9  
 Dislodge, 4  
 Dismayed (panic-stricken), 9  
 Dispute (quarrel), 10  
 Disturbed, 9  
 Ditch, 14  
 Draw up, 36  
 Drive from (repulse), 14  
 Drowned, 19  
 Dwell (inhabit), 16

## E

Encamp, 5  
 Enmity, be at (hostile), 10  
 Entertain, 13  
 Empire, 17  
 Escape, 12  
 Evening, 33  
 Expedition, 26, 37  
 Expense, 22

## F

Fall on (attack), 4  
 Favor, 9, 15  
 Feed, 13  
 Field, take—against (make an expedition), 26  
 Fight, 4

Fire, 11  
 Flight, 12  
 Follow, 12  
 Foot-soldiers (infantry), 35  
 Forage, 13  
 Forces, 35  
 Ford, 29  
 Fort, 14  
 Found a city, 14  
 Friendly, 15  
 Friendship, 15  
 Frightened (panic-stricken), 9  
 Front, 2

## G

Gallop (full speed), 20  
 Garrison, 14  
 Gate, 14  
 Gather (assemble), 6, 36  
 General, 25  
 Give way, 7;—up (surrender), 1  
 Governor, 17  
 Grain, 13  
 Grateful, 9  
 Guard, 18  
 Guide, 20

## H

Hand over (surrender), 1  
 Harm (trouble), 10  
 Heights, 23  
 Herald, 28  
 Hill, 23  
 Hostage, 28  
 Hostile to each other, 10

## I

Ill-treat, 10  
 Infantry, 35  
 Inhabitant, 16  
 Injure, 19  
 Island, 16

J

Join, 26, 38  
Journey, 20

K

Kill, 19  
King, 17  
Kingdom, 17

L

Land by (on foot), 20  
Land (disembark), 31  
Laugh, 9  
Lead, 25  
Lie at anchor, 31  
Lieutenant, 25  
Line, 2, 36  
Live (inhabit), 16  
Long, 33  
Lose, 19

M

March, 20, 23  
Market, 13  
Mart, 24  
Meadow, 16  
Meet (go to), 20  
Merchandise (goods), 13  
Money, 22  
Month, 33  
Mount, 20  
Mountain, 23

N

Need (lack), 36  
Night, 33

O

Opinion, 6  
Order, 1  
Outposts, 35  
Overhang, 23  
Overtake, 20

P

Palisade, 14  
Panic-stricken, 9  
Pay, ask for (demand), 22  
Persian, 6  
Pillage, 29  
Place (region), 16  
Pleasure, 9  
Pledges, 28  
Plot against, 10  
Plunder, 29  
Position (stronghold), 14  
Possess, 17  
Post (draw up), 36  
Port, 24  
Press hard, 4  
Prisoners, 19  
Provide, 13  
Provisions, 13  
Punish, 34

R

Rally, 4  
Raise (build), 14  
Raise (enlist), 36  
Rear guard, 2  
Relieve (rescue, aid), 15  
Reside (inhabit), 16  
Resist, 4  
Retire (retreat), 20  
Retreat, 20, 32  
Return, 20  
Ride, 20  
River, 30  
Road, 27  
Rob, 29  
Rout, 7  
Rule, 17  
Run away, 13  
Rush, 20



## S

Sack, 29  
 Sail, 31  
 Sailor, 24  
 Sally, 14  
 Salute (do homage), 17  
 Satrap, 17  
 Scale, 14  
 Scouts, 36  
 Sea, 16, 39  
 Sentinel (advance guard), 18  
 Set out, 20  
 Shoot, 21  
 Shore, go on (disembark), 31  
 Sides, take—with, 15  
 Signal, 32  
 Sink, 31  
 Situated, 16  
 Slaughter, 19  
 Sleep, 5  
 Slay (kill), 19  
 Snow, 39  
 South, 16  
 Spearmen, 35  
 Spoil (plunder), 29  
 Squadrons, 2  
 Stones, 21  
 Strike (beat), 34  
 Subdue (conquer), 7, 32  
 Suffer severely, 19  
 Summit, 23  
 Summon, 6

Sunrise, 33  
 Support (aid), 15  
 Surrender, 7;—arms, 1  
 Surround, 14

## T

Territory, 16, 26  
 Throne, 17  
 Time, 33  
 Torture, 10  
 Tower, 14  
 Town, 16  
 Transport, 31  
 Treat, 15  
 Troops, 35, 36  
 Truce, 28

## V

Van, 2, 20  
 Vengeance, 34  
 Vessel, 31  
 Victorious, 37  
 Village, 16

## W

Watch (guard), 14, 18  
 War, 38  
 Waste, lay, 29  
 Wine, 18  
 Woods, 16  
 Wound, 19  
 Wounded, 19

## Review.

Inf. of purpose - after verbs of giving + choosing.

ὅτι ws w. fut. ind. after v. of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{striving} \\ \text{precaution} \\ \text{consideration} \end{array} \right.$   
" used absolutely = imperative.

Result -

Fact. ὥστε or ὥς + ind.

Tendency. " " + inf.

"Before" - πρὶν + inf.

until → πρὶν ἂν + subj. (more vivid)

πρὶν + opt. (less vivid)

after neg. πρὶν + aor. ind. = until.

negative commands - pres. imp.  
aor. subj.

Wishes - εἰς + opt. (μή)

Impossible wishes - εἰς + pres. ind.  
aor. " .

ὥφελον + inf.

Ind. quest. -

after prim. tense - no change.

" sec. " - possible change to optative

Tenses unchanged. whether = εἰ .

Participle -

w. τυγχάνω λαμβάνω φθάνω

Cause - ἅτε + ~~pres.~~ part.

alleged - ὥς

avowed intent - ὥς + fut. part.

---

1. ἐφ' ὥστε + inf. (μή) = on condition that -

2. ἀφ' οὗ + ind. = since (temporal)

3. διὰ + ind. = because

## Indirect discourse.

1. οἶομαι  
νομίζω  
ἡγοῦμαι  
φημί } inf.

ἐλπίζω  
ὑποσχεόμεαι } inf. - regularly future.

2. λέγω - act. - & ὥς οἱ ὅτι

pass. → inf.

εἶπον - ὥς οἱ ὅτι

λέγω (pass.) } w. aor. inf. = force of 2nd pers. inf.  
δοκεῖ

3. Participles (οὐ) - nom. if referring to subj.  
γίγνσκω & οἶδα of main verb.

καταμανθάνω

αἰσθάνομαι

ἀκούω

ὁράω

πυνθάνομαι

ἀγγέλλω

after

δῆλός ἐστι

φανερὸς ἐστι

φαίνομαι

(I am clearly ...)

σύνοιδα ἑμαυτῇ

(I am conscious)

## Conditions

Simple -

εἰ + ind | 2nd.

Cont. to fact.

εἰ + imp. ind | ἂν + imp. ind.

εἰ + aor. ind | ἂν + aor. ind.

Future -

ἐὰν +

εἰ +

(ἐν

Less vivid

General -

ἐὰν +

εἰ +

Genitive -

Dative -

a) Ind. Obj.

b) Possession

c) Instrument

d) Accompaniment

e. Sure when

f) w. adj. - useful, friendly, + oppos.

g) w. verbs - obey, assist, be w. d. dist. make war on.

Accusative -

a) Duration of time or space

b) Specification

c) 2 acc. after v. meaning do anything to a p.

d) Subj. of inf.

e) 2 acc. w. αἰτέω ἀφαιρούμαι

ἀποστερέω διδάσκω Κρύ

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

